

Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite (1996) was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the [Oxford Text Archive](#) and other collections of the period. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a *de facto* standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of ‘Electronic Text Centers’ and digital library initiatives. It was also adopted as the basis for some early TEI-conformant authoring systems, and as the basis for introductory tutorials, many of them in languages other than English (see further the list of legacy versions at <http://www.tei-c.org/Vault/P4/Lite/>).

In 2002, following the publication of TEI P4, the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the TEI modification mechanism, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version. In 2006, a more substantially revised version based on TEI P5 was produced; this reflected the many changes between TEI P4 and TEI P5, but was not otherwise significantly different. In 2012, the TEI Technical Council, decided that a final revision should be undertaken to ensure that the documentation remained consistent with the latest (2.1) release of TEI P5. This version uses a recently added mechanism in the TEI customization architecture, which permits a customization to define only the TEI elements to be included in a schema, rather than the elements to be excluded from it. As such it is probably more resilient to change than earlier versions.

This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, *Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at <http://www.tei-c.org/>.

Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer software running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call *markup* or *encoding*. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the *Standard Generalized Markup Language* (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of *elements* and *attributes*, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI's use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

Since 2001, the TEI has been a community initiative supported by an international membership consortium. It was originally an international research project sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, with substantial funding over its first five years from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada and others. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines became increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI Consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite document conforms to version 2.1 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5, released in June 2012.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the

closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these 'Poughkeepsie Principles' were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

- suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;
- be simple, clear, and concrete;
- be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
- allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
- provide for user-defined extensions;
- conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

- the common core of textual features be easily shared;
- additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
- multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
- the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
- adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called *TEI Lite*.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful 'starter set', comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

- it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);
- it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;
- it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;
- it should be a pure subset of the full TEI scheme and defined using the customizatation methods described in the TEI Guidelines;
- it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.

A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. In an ideal world, such output might be generated by a very accurate optical scanner. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --

'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only -- 'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'

A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear.

'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Edward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.

'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.'

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words --

'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faal, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see

that.'

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and

474

JANE EYRE

475

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.

'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.'

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspon

d-

ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
- the accented letter in *faàl* and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
- Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.

- The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty `<pb>` element alone.
- The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

<pb n="474"/>
<div n="38" type="chapter">
<p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone
present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where
Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</p>
<p>
<q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</q> The housekeeper and her
husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may
at any time safely
communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears
pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy
wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which
she was basting
a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but
Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —</p>
<p>
<q>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</q>
</p>
<p>A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know
you were gone to church to be wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when
I turned to him, was
grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would be,</q> he said: <q>I knew what Mr
Edward</q> (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he
was the cadet of the
house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — <q>I knew what
Mr Edward would do;
and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I

wish you joy, miss!</q> and he politely pulled his forelock.</p>

<p>

<q>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</q>

</p>

<p>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen.

In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —

</p>

<p>

<q>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</q> And agai

n, <q>If she

ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faal, and varry good-natured; and i'

his een she's

fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</q>

</p>

<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully

explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb n="475"/> Mary appro

ved the step

unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over

the honeymoon,

and then she would come and see me.</p>

<p>

<q>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr Rochester, when I re

ad her letter

to him; <q>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine ou

r life long:

its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>

</p>

<p>How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the lette

r in which I

communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, me

ntioning Mr

Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and

though very

serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspo

ndence ever

since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without Go

d in the world,

and only mind earthly things.</p>

</div>

This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. As a trivial example, note that in the second example, end-of-line hyphenation has been silently removed. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word 'honeymoon' to appear as 'honey-moon' on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. This is an instance of the fundamental *selectivity* of any encoding. An encoding

makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

TEI-recommended ways of carrying out most of these are described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

- detailed analysis of the components of names;
- detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text's origins or topics;
- information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.

The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a *TEI header* (marked up as a `<teiHeader>` element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a `<text>` element). These two elements are combined together to form a single `<TEI>` element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace¹.

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a *text profile*), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section 19. The Electronic Title Page.

¹ A *namespace* is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for all TEI elements is <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>

A TEI text may be *unitary* (a single work) or *composite* (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional *front* or *back*. In between is the *body* of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of *groups*, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[ header information for the composite ]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!--[ front matter of first text ]-->
        </front>
        <body>
          <!--[ body of first text ]-->
        </body>
        <back>
          <!--[ back matter of first text ]-->
        </back>
      </text>
    </group>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

```

<!--[ front matter of second text]-->
  </front>
  <body>
<!--[ body of second text ]-->
  </body>
  <back>
<!--[ back matter of second text ]-->
  </back>
</text>
<!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->
</group>
<back>
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->
</back>
</text>
</TEI>

```

It is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and may itself have a header:

```

<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[header information for the corpus]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for first text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[first text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for second text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[second text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>

```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora -- that is, one `<teiCorpus>` element may contain many nested `<teiCorpus>` elements rather than many nested `<TEI>` elements, to any depth considered necessary.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI *elements* with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any *attributes* specific to that element, and a reference to any *classes* of which the element is

a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

- *TEI* (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element.
- *teiHeader* (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.
- *text* (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.
- *teiCorpus* (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

- *front* (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.
- *group* (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.
- *body* (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.
- *back* (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 18. Front and Back Matter. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the <p> tag. The <div> element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

- *p* (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.
- *div* (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The *type* attribute on the <div> element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical

values might be ‘book’, ‘chapter’, ‘section’, ‘part’, ‘poem’, ‘song’, etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A `<div>` element may itself contain further, nested, `<div>`s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierachic model.

The `xml:id` attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 8. Cross References and Links. It is often useful to provide an `xml:id` attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below. It is particularly useful to supply such identifiers if the resource concerned is to be made available over the web, since they make it much easier for other web-based applications to link directly to the corresponding parts of your text.

The `n` attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the `n` attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by `xml:id`, it does not need to be unique.

The `xml:lang` attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 6.3. Foreign Words or Expressions below.

The `rend` attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 6. Marking Highlighted Phrases below. As with the `type` attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefined the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, `xml:id`, `n`, `xml:lang`, and `rend` are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are *global attributes*. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

The value of every `xml:id` attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierachic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define `xml:id` values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
<div n="I" type="book" xml:id="WN1">
  <div n="I.1" type="chapter" xml:id="WN101">
```

```

<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div n="I.2" type="chapter" xml:id="WN102">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<!-- ... -->
<div n="I.10" type="chapter"
  xml:id="WN110">
  <div n="I.10.1" type="part"
    xml:id="WN1101">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div n="I.10.2" type="part"
  xml:id="WN1102">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
</div>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div n="II" type="book" xml:id="WN2">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
</body>

```

A different numbering scheme may be used for *xml:id* and *n* attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```

<body>
<div n="1" type="volume" xml:id="TS01">
  <div n="1" type="chapter" xml:id="TS011">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
  <div n="2" type="chapter" xml:id="TS012">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
</div>
<div n="2" type="volume" xml:id="TS02">
  <div n="3" type="chapter" xml:id="TS021">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
  <div n="4" type="chapter" xml:id="TS022">
<!-- ... -->
</div>
</div>
</body>

```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the *xml:id* values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

Headings and Closings

Every *<div>* may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as 'End of Chapter 1' at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

- *head* (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.
- *trailer* contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 18.1.2. Prefatory Matter.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example 'Chapter 1') or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. *<div type="chapter" n="1">*), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div n="Winter" type="Part" xml:id="UGT1">
<div n="1" type="Chapter" xml:id="UGT11">
  <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
  <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </p>
</div>
</div>
```

Prose, Verse and Drama

As in the Bronte example above, the paragraphs making up a textual division are tagged with the *<p>* tag. In poetic or dramatic texts different tags are needed, to represent verse lines and stanzas in the first case, or individual speeches and stage directions in the second. :

- *l* (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.
- *lg* (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.
- *sp* (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.
- *speaker* contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.
- *stage* (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```

<lg n="I">
<l>I Sing the progresse of a
  deathlesse soule,</l>
<l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
<l>Plac'd in
  most shapes; all times before the law</l>
<l>Yoak'd us, and when, and since, in this I
  sing.</l>
<l>And the great world to his aged evening;</l>
<l>From infant morne, through manly
  noone I draw.</l>
<l>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw,</l>
<l>Greeke brass, or
  Roman iron, is in this one;</l>
<l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and
  stone,</l>
<l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>

```

Note that the `<l>` element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The `<lb>` element described in section 5. Page and Line Numbers might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Here is the end of a famous dramatic text, in which speeches and stage directions are marked:

```

<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Estragon</speaker>
<p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Pull <emph>on</emph> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>
<stage>(realizing his trousers are down)</stage>.
  True</p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
<speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
<p>Well? Shall we go?</p>

```

```

</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move.</stage>

```

Note that the `<stage>` (stage direction) element can appear either within a speech or between speeches. The `<sp>` ("speech") element contains, following an optional `<speaker>` element indicating who is speaking, either paragraphs (if the speech is in prose) or verse lines or stanzas as in the next example. In this case, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete :

```

<div n="I" type="Act">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div n="1" type="Scene">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rend="italic"> Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="F">He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
  <!-- ... -->
</div>
</div>

```

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between

two speakers:

```
<div>
<sp>
<speaker>First voice</speaker>
<lg part="I" type="stanza">
<l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
<l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
</lg>
</sp>
<sp>
<speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
<lg part="F">
<l>The air is cut away before.</l>
<l>And closes from behind.</l>
</lg>
</sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

The `<sp>` element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the `who` attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```
<div>
<sp who="#OPI">
<speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
<p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp who="#GRM">
<speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
<p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp who="#OPI">
<speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
<p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
place....</p>
<p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for th
e present I
will forbear.</p>
</sp>
</div>
```

Here the `who` attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to a list of the characters in the novel, each of which has an identifier:

```
<list>
<head>Characters in the novel</head>
<item xml:id="OPI">
<name>Dr Opimian</name> : named for the famous Roman fine wine</
```

```

item>
<item xml:id="GRM">
<name>Mr Gryll</name> : named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses'
sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in th
at state than
as a man</item>
</list>

```

Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

- *pb* (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.
- *lb* (line beginning) marks the beginning of a topographic line in some edition or version of a text.
- *milestone* (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global *n* attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. It is also useful for synchronizing an encoded text with a set of page images. Recording the line breaks may be useful for similar reasons.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the *ed* attribute, and supply as many tags as necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (*ED1* and *ED2*)

<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would <pb ed="ED2" n="485"/> just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>

A special attribute *break* may be used to indicate whether or not this empty element is considered as a word-breaking, irrespective of any adjacent whitespace. For example, in the following encoded sample:

The <pb> and <lb> elements are special cases of the general class of *milestone* elements which mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the *ed* and *unit*

attributes may be chosen freely, but should be documented in the header `<refsDecl>` element (see 19.2.3. Reference and Classification Declarations). The `< milestone>` element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

Marking Highlighted Phrases

Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global `rend` attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged `<head rend="bold">`, and one in italic `<head rend="italic">`.

The values to be used for the `rend` attribute are not specified by the TEI Guidelines, since they will depend entirely on the needs of the particular project. Some typical values might include `italic`, `bold` etc. for font variations; `center`, `right` etc. for alignment; `large`, `small` etc. for size; `smallcaps`, `allcaps` etc. for type variants and so on. Several such words may be used in combination as necessary, but no formal syntax is proposed. The full TEI Guidelines provide more rigorous mechanisms, using other W3C standards such as CSS, as an alternative to the use of `rend`.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element `<hi>` may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

- `hi` (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```
<p>
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further
    witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merc
    hant, in
    consideration of the said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

- `emph` (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.
- `foreign` (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.
- `gloss` (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or

definition for some other word or phrase.

- *label* (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.
- *mentioned* marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.
- *term* (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.
- *title* (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements *<q>* and *<gloss>* (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the highlighting is to be recorded, use the global *rend* attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

*<p>*On the one hand the *<title>*Nibelungenlied*</title>*
is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *<foreign>*romans

d'antiquité*</foreign>*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...*</p>*

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

*<p>*On the one hand the *<hi rend="italic">*Nibelungenlied*</hi>* is associated
with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France,
the *<hi rend="italic">*romans d'antiquité*</hi>*, the romances of Chrétien de
Troyes,
...*</p>*

Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

- *q* (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.
- *mentioned* marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.
- *soCalled* (so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.
- *gloss* (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

*<p>*Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson's description of the lexicographer as *<q>*a harmless drudge.*</q>*

</p>

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), the *rend* attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```
<p>
<q>Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said —
<q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk
began
flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two *<q>* elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes *next* and *prev* may be used, as described in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the *who* attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came
down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand,
and he
says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red
-headed
man.</q>
</q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the *rend* attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements to distinguish direct speech, quotation, and other typical uses of quotation mark although it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text. For simplicity, only *<q>* (which may be used for any such case) has been included in TEI Lite.

Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global *xml:lang* attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element *<foreign>* may be used, again using the *xml:lang*

attribute. For example:

```
<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>. </p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die
    Dreigroschenoper</title>? </p>
<p>
    <mentioned xml:lang="fr">Savoir-faire</mentioned> is French
    for know-how.
</p>
<p>The court issued a writ of <term xml:lang="la">mandamus</term>. </p>
As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag
foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>,
<mentioned>, or <term> applies. The global xml:lang attribute may be
attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of
the surrounding text.
```

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the *xml:lang* attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards², as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

zh	Chinese	grc	Ancient Greek
en	English	el	Greek
enm	Middle English	ja	Japanese
fr	French	la	Latin
de	German	sa	Sanskrit

Notes

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:

- *note* (note) contains a note or annotation.

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their *target* attribute.

The *n* attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The *resp* attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds.

Examples:

2 The relevant standard is *Best Current Practice 47* (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47>). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

<p>Collections are ensembles of distinct entities or objects of any sort. <note n="1" place="foot"> We explain below why we use the uncommon term <mentioned>collection</mentioned> instead of the expected <mentioned>set</mentioned>. Our usage corresponds to the <mentioned>aggregate</mentioned> of many mathematical writings and to the sense of <mentioned>class</mentioned> found in older logical writings. </note> The elements ...</p>

```
<lg xml:id="RAM609">
<note place="margin">The
curse is finally expiated</note>
<l>And now this spell was snapt: once more</l>
<l>I viewed
the ocean green,</l>
<l>And looked far forth, yet little saw</l>
<l>Of what had else been seen
—</l>
</lg>
```

Cross References and Links

Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

Simple Cross References

A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

- *ref* (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.
- *ptr* (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that <ptr> is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas <ref> may contain some text as well, typically identifying the target of the cross reference. The <ptr> element would be used for a cross reference which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent :

See especially <ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on page 34</ref>.

See especially <ptr target="#SEC12"/>.

The value of the *target* attribute on either element may be the identifier of some other element within the current document. The passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a <div> element:

```
... see especially <ptr target="#SEC12"/>. ...
<div xml:id="SEC12">
  <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
  <!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Because the *xml:id* attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

... this is
discussed in <ref target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref> ...
<p xml:id="pspec">Links
may be made to any kind of element ...</p>

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg> element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

- *anchor* (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.
- *seg* (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level.

In the following (imaginary) example, <ref> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

Returning to <ref target="#ABCD">the point where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that <ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref> had been circled in red by a previous reader

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

```
....<anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... ....<seg type="target" xml:id
```

```
= "EFGH" > ...  
</seg> ...
```

The *type* attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking below.

Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements `<ptr>` and `<ref>` may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the *target* attribute may be any valid *universal resource indicator* (URI) [Note: A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar 'URL' used to indicate a web page, such as <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml>] .

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2>. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an *xml:id* attribute value of *SEC2* within the document retrieved from <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml>. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means.

Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

ana

links an element with its interpretation.

corresp

links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

next

links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

prev

links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 15. Interpretation and Analysis. For example,

linguistic analysis of the sentence ‘John loves Nancy’ might be encoded as follows:

```
<seg ana="SVO" type="sentence">
<seg ana="#NP1" type="lex">John</seg>
<seg ana="#VVI" type="lex">loves</seg>
<seg ana="#NP1" type="lex">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers *SVO*, *NP1*, and *VVI* where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the *<seg>* element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example

```
<seg corresp="#EN1" xml:id="FR1"
xml:lang="fr">Jean
aime Nancy</seg>
<seg corresp="#FR1" xml:id="EN1"
xml:lang="en">John loves
Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between ‘the show’ and ‘Shirley’, and between ‘NBC’ and ‘the network’:

```
<p>
<title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which
made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on <name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg corresp="#nbc" xml:id="network">the network</seg>
says <seg corresp="#shirley" xml:id="show">the show</seg> still is being
considered.
</p>
```

The *next* and *prev* attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q next="#Q1b" xml:id="Q1a">Who-e debel you?</q> —
he at last said — <q prev="#Q1a" xml:id="Q1b">you no speak-e, damme, I ki
ll-e.</q> And so
saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
```

Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these

needs.

Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *correction*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

- *corr* (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.
- *sic* (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

- *orig* (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.
- *reg* (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*.

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green feelds
A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here,
specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of *a'* and
feelds for *he* and *fields* respectively. He or she might also want to emend *table*
to *babbl'd*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century
Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be
appropriate:

... for his nose was as sharp as
a pen and <reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green
<reg>fields</reg>

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain
the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains
are in some sense anomalous:

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and
<orig>a</orig>
<sic>table</sic> of green
<orig>feelds</orig>

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a
single composite text, using the *<choice>* element.

- *choice* (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same
point in a text.

This allows an editor to mark where alternative readings are possible:

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and
<choice>
<orig>a</orig>
<reg>he</reg>

```

</choice>
<choice>
  <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
  <sic>table</sic>
</choice> of green

<choice>
  <orig>feelds</orig>
  <reg>fields</reg>
</choice>

```

Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

- *add* (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- *gap* (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.
- *del* (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- *unclear* (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read 'The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions.' then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second *for*, thus:

The following elements are provided for ~~resp="#LB">for~~ simple editorial interventions.

The attribute value #LB on the *resp* attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a *<respStmt>* element) for the agency responsible for correcting the duplication of *for*.

If the source read 'The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions.' (i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:

The following elements ~~resp="#LB">are~~ provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements are also used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written 'How it galls me, what a galling shadow', then crossed out the word *galls* and inserted *dogs* might be encoded thus:

How it <del hand="#DHL" type="overstrike">galls
<add hand="#DHL" place="supralinear">dogs</add> me, what a galling sha
dow

Again, the code #DHL points to another location where more information about the hand concerned is to be found³.

Similarly, the <unclear> and <gap> elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of <add> for a conjectural emendation:

One hundred
& twenty good regulars joined to me <unclear>
<gap reason="indecipherable"/>
</unclear>
& instantly, would aid me signally <add hand="#ed">in?</add> an ente
prise against
Wilmington.

The element marks material which has been transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while <gap> marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

<p> ... An example of a list appearing in a fief
ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
<date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of
honey.</p>
<gap>
<desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
<p>A description of the

overall structure of the account is once again ... </p>

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

<p>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the <term>minibuffe
r</term>. This is
the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify
filenames for Emacs
to find, values for search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic">
<desc>diagram of
Emacs screen</desc>
</gap>

3 The full TEI provides a range of elements for encoding metadata about manuscript production and description, which are not however included in TEI Lite

</p>

The full TEI scheme provides more precise ways of capturing different aspects of a transcription, distinguishing for example between text added or supplied by the encoder and text indicated as supplied or deleted in the source. TEI Lite does not provide different tags for these purposes.

Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

- *abbr* (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.
- *expan* (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The *<abbr>* element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

We can sum up the above

discussion as follows: the identity of a *<abbr>CC</abbr>* is defined by that calibration of values which motivates the elements of its *<abbr>GSP</abbr>*;

Every manufacturer of *<abbr>3GL</abbr>* or *<abbr>4GL</abbr>* languages is currently nailing on *<abbr>OOP</abbr>* extensions

The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The *<expan>* element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word *per* is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

<expan>per</expan>

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The *<expan>* element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation *wt* (for *with*) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as ‘*with*’, italicising the letters not found in the source. One simple means of achieving that would be an encoding such as the follow

<expan>w<hi rend="it">i</hi>t<hi rend="it">h</hi></expan>

The full TEI also provides elements *<ex>* and *<am>* for use in this situation, but these are not included in the TEI Lite schema.

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
<abbr>wt</abbr>
<expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of ‘data-like’ features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

Names and Referring Strings

A *referring string* is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

- *rs* (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.
- *name* (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The *type* attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs>
is let at last?</q>
```

It being one of the principles of the `<rs type="organization">`Circumlocution Office`</rs>` never, on any account whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer, `<rs type="person">Mr Barnacle</rs>` said,
`<q>Possibly.</q>`

As the following example shows, the `<rs>` element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day...
```

The `<name>` element by contrast is provided for the special case of referencing strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the `<rs>` element, or nested within it if a referring string

contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as *van* or *de la*, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The *key* attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <rs key="BENM1" type="person">Mr.  
Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs key="BENM2" type="person">his lady</rs> to  
him one day.  
<q>have  
you heard that <rs key="NETP1" type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let  
at  
last?</q>
```

This use should be distinguished from the case of the *<reg>* (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name key="WADLM1" type="person">  
<choice>  
  <sic>Walter de la Mare</sic>  
  <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>  
</choice>  
</name> was  
born at <name key="Ch1" type="place">Charlton</name>, in <name key="KT1" type="county">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

The *<index>* element discussed in [indexing](#) may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

```
<p>  
  <name type="place">Montaillou</name> is not a  
  large parish. At the time of the events which led to <name type="person">Fournier</name>'s  
  <index>  
    <term>Benedict XII, Pope of Avignon (Jacques Fournier)</term>  
  </index>  
  investigations, the local population consisted of between 200 and 250  
  inhabitants.  
</p>
```

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process.

For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

- *date* (date) contains a date in any format.
- *time* (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values.

- *att.datable* provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

The *when* attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g.

'1990', 'September 1990', 'twelvish') can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date when="1980-02-21">21  
Feb 1980</date>  
<date when="1990">1990</date>  
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>  
<date when="--09">September</date>  
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept 11th, 12 minutes before 9  
am</date>
```

Note in the last example the use of a normalized representation for the date string which includes a time: this example could thus equally well be tagged using the *<time>* element.

Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth
Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy
-seven of the
Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-
Sixth.</date>

```
<l>specially when it's nine below zero</l>  
<l>and <time when="15:00:00">three o'clock in the afternoon</time>  
</l>
```

Numbers

Numbers can be written with either letters or digits (twenty-one, xxi, and 21) and their presentation is language-dependent (e.g. English *5th* becomes Greek ៥.; English *123,456.78* equals French *123.456,78*). In natural-language processing or machine-translation applications, it is often helpful to distinguish them from other, more 'lexical' parts of the text. In other applications, the ability to record a number's value in standard notation is

important. The `<num>` element provides this possibility:

- `num` (number) contains a number, written in any form.

For example:

```
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>
```

Lists

The element `<list>` is used to mark any kind of *list*. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

- `list` (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.
- `item` (item) contains one component of a list.
- `label` (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with `<item>`. The first `<item>` may optionally be preceded by a `<head>`, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the `n` attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the `<label>` element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item n="1">First item in list.</item>
  <item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
  <item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <label>1</label>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <label>2</label>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <label>3</label>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a *glossary list*, tagged `<list type="gloss">`. Here, each item comprises a *term* and a *gloss*, marked with `<label>` and `<item>` respectively. These correspond to the elements `<term>` and `<gloss>`, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

```
<list type="gloss">
<head>Vocabulary</head>
<label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
<item>now</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
<item>loudly</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
<item>blooms</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
<item>meadow</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
<item>wood</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
<item>ewe</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
<item>lows</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
<item>bounds, frisks</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">murie</label>
<item>merrily</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">swik</label>
<item>cease</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">naver</label>
<item>never</item>
</list>
```

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (13. Tables).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list type="gloss">
<label>EVIL</label>
<item>
<list type="simple">
<item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery
.</item>
<item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
<item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human s
```

```

society.</item>
</list>
</item>
<label>GOOD</label>
<item>
<list type="simple">
<item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
<item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death...</item>
<item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances....</item>
</list>
</item>
</list>

```

A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

```

<p>On those remote pages it is written that animals
are divided into <list rend="run-on">
<item n="a">those that belong to the Emperor,</item>
<item n="b"> embalmed ones, </item>
<item n="c"> those that are trained, </item>
<item n="d"> suckling pigs, </item>
<item n="e"> mermaids, </item>
<item n="f"> fabulous ones, </item>
<item n="g"> stray dogs, </item>
<item n="h"> those that are included in this classification, </item>
<item n="i"> those that tremble as if they were mad, </item>
<item n="j"> innumerable ones, </item>
<item n="k"> those drawn with a very fine camel's-hair brush, </item>
<item n="l"> others, </item>
<item n="m"> those that have just broken a flower vase, </item>
<item n="n"> those that resemble flies from a distance.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the `<listBibl>` element, described in the next section.

Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element `<bibl>` is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

- *bibl* (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- *author* (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- *biblScope* (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.
- *date* (date) contains a date in any format.
- *editor* contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.
- *publisher* (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.
- *pubPlace* (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.
- *title* (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire
 in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl>
 <author>Kittredge</author>,
 <title>Harvard Studies</title>
 <biblScope>5. 88ff</biblScope>
 </bibl>).

For lists of bibliographic citations, the <listBibl> element should be used; it may contain a series of <bibl> elements.

Tables

Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:

- *table* (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.
- *row* (row) contains one row of a table.
- *cell* (cell) contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on a main, for the burials  

  that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:— <table cols="4" r  

  ows="5">  

<row role="data">
```

```

<cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
<cell>64</cell>
<cell>84</cell>
<cell>119</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
<cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
<cell>65</cell>
<cell>105</cell>
<cell>116</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
<cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
<cell>213</cell>
<cell>421</cell>
<cell>554</cell>
</row>
</table>
</p>
<p>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian  

method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ... </p>

```

Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

- *graphic* (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.
- *figure* (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.
- *figDesc* (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the *<figure>* element itself, in a *<head>* and one or more *<p>* elements, as also may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a *<figDesc>* element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example:

```
<pb n="412"/>
<figure>
  <graphic url="p412fig.png"/>
</figure>
<pb n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The `<graphic>` element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
  <graphic url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-
ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the `<head>` element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure. It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The `<figure>` element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic 'block':

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fessipic.png"/>
  <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
  <figDesc>A Cruikshank
    engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The `facs` attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simple case where only page images are available, the `facs` attribute on the `<pb>` element may be used to associate each image with an appropriate point in the text:

```
<text>
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</text>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file page1.png etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are provided in the full TEI Guidelines.

Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that *all* markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between ‘objective’ and ‘subjective’ information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of ‘canonical reference’. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

- *s* (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the *<s>* element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking *orthographic sentences*, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div n="38" type="chapter">
  <p>
    <s n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
    <s n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
    <s n="003">he
      and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
    <s n="004">When we got back from
      church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cookin
      g the dinner, and
      John cleaning the knives, and I said —</s>
  </p>
  <p>
    <q>
      <s n="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</s>
    </q> ... </p>
  </div>
```

Note that *<s>* elements cannot nest: the beginning of one *<s>* element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in

the text being analysed will be contained by exactly one `<s>` element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the `xml:id` attribute might be used in preference to the `n` used in the above example.

Words and punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, ‘can’t’ in English or ‘du’ in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

- `w` (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.
- `pc` (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI Lite as follows:

```
<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
  <pc>:</pc>
  <w ana="#TO0">to</w>
  <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
  <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
  <pc>. </pc>
</s>
```

In this example, each word has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the `ana` attribute discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above. The `<w>` also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the `lemma` attribute, or by reference, using the `lemmaRef` attribute, as in this example:

```
...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be"
  lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...
```

General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section 8. Cross References and Links); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which the encoder may assign a user-specified `type`, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no ‘apostrophe’ element to mark parts of

a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the `<q>` element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the `who` attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the `<seg>` element as follows:

```
<div n="38" type="chapter">
<p>
  <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we
had: ...
</p>
</div>
```

The `type` attribute on the `<seg>` element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A `<seg>` element of one type (unlike the `<s>` element which it superficially resembles) can be nested within a `<seg>` element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the `type` attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the `<interp>` element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner.

- `interp` (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.
- `interpGrp` (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allow the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with `<seg>` one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with `<interp>` one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, `<interp>` is a ‘stand off’ element: it does not surround the segments of text which it describes, but instead is linked to the passage in question either by means of the `ana` attribute discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above, or by means of its own `inst` attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, independently of the document hierarchy, as well as facilitating the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose `<interpGrp>` element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual

scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from *Jane Eyre* for example, might be associated with the rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).

These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the <text> element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

```
<back>
<div type="Interpretations">
<p>
<interp resp="#LB-MSM"
type="figureOfSpeech" xml:id="fig-apos-1">apostrophe</interp>
<interp resp="#LB-MSM"
type="figureOfSpeech" xml:id="fig-hyp-1">hyperbole</interp>
<interp resp="#LB-MSM" type="setting"
xml:id="set-church-1">church</interp>
<interp resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference"
xml:id="ref-church-1">church</interp>
<interp resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference"
xml:id="ref-serv-1">servants</interp>
</p>
</div>
</back>
```

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the <interpGrp> element to group together all those <interp> elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

```
<back>
<div type="Interpretations">
<p>
<interpGrp resp="#LB-MSM"
type="figureOfSpeech">
<interp xml:id="fig-apos">apostrophe</interp>
<interp xml:id="fig-hyp">hyperbole</interp>
<interp xml:id="fig-meta">metaphor</interp>
</interpGrp>
<interpGrp resp="#LB-MSM"
type="scene-setting">
<interp xml:id="set-church">church</interp>
<interp xml:id="set-kitch">kitchen</interp>
<interp xml:id="set-unspec">unspecified</interp>
</interpGrp>
<interpGrp resp="#LB-MSM"
type="reference">
<interp xml:id="ref-church">church</interp>
```

```

<interp xml:id="ref-serv">servants</interp>
<interp xml:id="ref-cook">cooking</interp>
</interpGrp>
</p>
</div>
</back>

```

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The *ana* attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

```

<div n="38" type="chapter">
<p ana="#set-church #set-kitch"
xml:id="P38.1">
<s ana="#fig-apos" xml:id="P38.1.1">Reader, I
    married him.</s>
</p>
</div>

```

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the *<interp>* elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their *inst* attribute:

```

<interp inst="#P38.1.1" resp="#LB-MSM"
type="figureOfSpeech" xml:id="fig-apos-2">apostrophe</interp>
<interp inst="#P38.1" resp="#LB-MSM"
type="scene-setting" xml:id="set-church-2">church</interp>
<interp inst="#P38.1" resp="#LB-MSM"
type="scene-setting" xml:id="set-kitchen-2">kitchen</interp>

```

The *<interp>* element is not limited to any particular type of analysis. The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use *<interp>* to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

```

<interp type="pos" xml:id="NP1">noun
phrase, singular</interp>
<interp type="pos" xml:id="VV1">inflected verb, present-tense
singular</interp> ...

```

Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI scheme for the encoding of existing ‘pre-electronic’ documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document’s structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking

features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

- *eg* (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.
- *code* contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.
- *ident* (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. *<ident>* is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.
- *gi* (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.
- *att* (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.
- *formula* (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula.
- *val* (value) contains a single attribute value.

The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:

```
<p>It is traditional to introduce a language with a  
program like the following: <eg xml:space="preserve"> CHAR*12 GRTG  
    GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD'  
    PRINT *, GRTG  
    END  
</eg>  
</p>  
<p>This simple example first declares a variable <ident>GRTG</ident>, in t  
he line  
<code>CHAR*12 GRTG</code>, which identifies <ident>GRTG</ident> as c  
onsisting of 12 bytes  
of type <ident>CHAR</ident>. To this variable, the value <val>HELLO WOR  
LD</val> is then  
assigned.</p>
```

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g. to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as *<ident>* greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The *<formula>* element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the *notation* attribute, as in the following example:

```
<formula notation="tex"> \begin{math} E =
```

`mc^{2}\end{math} </formula>`

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference < to represent each < character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a *CDATA marked section*, as in the following example:

`<p>A list should be encoded as`

`follows: <eg><![CDATA [<list> <item>First item in the`
`list</item> <item>Second item</item> </list>]]> </eg> The`
`<gi>list</gi> element consists of a series of <gi>item</gi>`
`elements.`

The `<list>` element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration `<![CDATA[`, and ending with `]]>`).

Note also the use of the `<gi>` element to tag references to element names (or *generic identifiers*) within the body of the text.

Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.

- `divGen` (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

The `<divGen>` element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in the following example:

```
<front>
  <titlePage>
    <!-- ... -->
  </titlePage>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</front>
<body>
  <!-- ... -->
```

```

</body>
<back>
  <div>
    <head>Appendix</head>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <divGen n="Index" type="index"/>
</back>

```

This example also demonstrates the use of the *type* attribute to distinguish the different kinds of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a *toc*) and in the second an index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated) for some reason, the *<list>* element discussed in section 11. Lists should be used.

Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as *<term>* or *<name>* will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose *<index>* tag which may be used to mark both the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done.

- *index* (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

... TEI lite also provides a special purpose
<gi>index</gi> tag
<index>
<term>indexing</term>
</index>
<index>
<term>index (tag)</term>
<index>
<term>use in index generation</term>
</index>
</index>
 which may be used ...

The *<index>* element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet's references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet's references to Jupiter (as *deus*, *se*, and as the subject of *confiteor* [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as *imago tauri*

fallacis and the subject of *teneo*), and so on.⁴

```
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis  
imagine tauri</l>
```

```
<l n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat</l>
```

This need might be met using the `<note>` element discussed in section 7. Notes, or with the `<interp>` element discussed in section 15. Interpretation and Analysis. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the `<index>` element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called *dn*), another for onomastic references (called *on*), a third for pronominal references (called *pr*) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

```
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita  
fallacis imagine tauri <index indexName="dn">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>deus</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
<index indexName="on">  
  <term>Iuppiter (taurus)</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>imago tauri  
      fallacis</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
</l>  
<l n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaque rura tenebat  
<index indexName="pr">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>se</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
<index indexName="v">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>confiteor  
      (v227)</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
</l>
```

For each `<index>` element above, an entry will be generated in the

⁴ The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken.

appropriate index, using as headword the content of the `<term>` element it contains; the `<term>` elements nested within the secondary `<index>` element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the `<index>` element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the `<l>` element containing it.

Addressees

The `<address>` element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more `<addrLine>` elements, one for each line of the address.

- *address* (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
- *addrLine* (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

```
<address>
<addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
<addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
<addrLine>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
<addrLine>U.S.A.</addrLine>
</address>
```

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the `<name>` element discussed above (section 10.1. Names and Referring Strings).

```
<address>
<addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
<addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
<addrLine>
<name type="city">Chicago</name>, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
<addrLine>
<name type="country">USA</name>
</addrLine>
</address>
```

Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the diverse languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other 'non-ASCII' characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters & and < may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as *entity references*, like

this: & or <. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

Front and Back Matter

Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element `<titlePage>`. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

- *titlePage* (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.
- *docTitle* (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
- *titlePart* (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
- *byline* (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
- *docAuthor* (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
- *docDate* (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.
- *docEdition* (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.
- *docImprint* (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.
- *epigraph* (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the *rend* attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the `xml:lang` attribute or the `<foreign>` element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the `<name>` element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage rend="Roman">
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>. </titlePart>
  <titlePart> To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>. </titlePart>
</docTitle>
<byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
</byline>
<docImprint>
  <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John Starkey</name>
    at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near
    <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
</docImprint>
<docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

```
<titlePage>
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman
    Conquest; </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts. </titlePart>
</docTitle>
<titlePart>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents private
  as well as public. </titlePart>
<docEdition>New edition, with corrections and additions </docEdition>
<byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>
</byline>
<epigraph>
  <q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened. </q>
  <bibl>BEAUMONT</bibl>
</epigraph>
<docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea </docImprint>
<docDate>1860. </docDate>
</titlePage>
```

As elsewhere, the *ref* attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```
<byline>By <docAuthor>
  <name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes
    Strickland </name>
</docAuthor>
</byline>
```

Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using `<div>` elements; the following suggested values for the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

preface

A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text

dedication

A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

abstract

A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose

ack

A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text

contents

A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The `<list>` element should be used to mark its structure.

frontispiece

A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the *type* attribute.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the `<head>` element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

- *salute* (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.
- *signed* (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.
- *byline* (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
- *dateline* (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.
- *argument* (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.
- *cit* (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.
- *imprimatur* (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

- *opener* (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.
- *closer* (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, bylines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements.

As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton's *Comus* should be marked up as follows:

```
<div type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent
    to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>THis <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your
  Self, and
    others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant
  <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
  <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
  <signed>
    <name>H. LAWES.</name>
  </signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

Back Matter

Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the *<back>* element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as *<div>* elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the *type* attribute:

appendix

An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

glossary

A list of terms associated with definition texts ('glosses'): this should be encoded as a *<list type="gloss">* element

notes

A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

bibliogr

A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a <listBibl>
index

Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the <index> element described above).

colophon

A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element <teiHeader> and has four major parts:

- *fileDesc* (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- *encodingDesc* (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- *profileDesc* (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.
- *revisionDesc* (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the *type* attribute indicates the type of header. <teiHeader type="corpus"> introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more <p>s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

The File Description

The <fileDesc> element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

- *titleStmt* (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- *editionStmt* (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
- *extent* (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some

carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

- *publicationStmt* (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- *seriesStmt* (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- *notesStmt* (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.
- *sourceDesc* (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as 'born digital' for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <!-- bibliographic description of the digital resource -->
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <!-- information about how the resource is distributed -->
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
      <!-- information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived --
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the *<titleStmt>*:

- *title* (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
- *author* (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- *sponsor* (sponsor) specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.
- *funder* (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.
- *principal* (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.
- *respStmt* (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production

or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital one will obviously be similar. However, it is important to distinguish the title of the computer file from that of the source text, for example:

[title of source]: a machine readable transcription [title of source]: electronic edition A machine readable version of: [title of source]

The *<respStmt>* element contains the following subcomponents:

- *resp* (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.
- *name* (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable transcription</title>
  <author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>James D. Benson</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

The Edition Statement

The *<editionStmt>* groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where *edition* is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

- *edition* (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.
- *respStmt* (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="U2">Third
    draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
  </edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

The Extent Statement

The *<extent>* statement describes the approximate size of the digital

resource.

Example:

```
<extent>4532  
bytes</extent>
```

The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

- *publisher* (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.
- *distributor* (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.
- *authority* (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

- *pubPlace* (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.
- *address* (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
- *idno* (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
- *availability* (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.
- *licence* contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.
- *date* (date) contains a date in any format.

Example:

```
<publicationStmt>  
  <publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre</publisher>  
  <pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>  
  <date>2011</date>  
  <availability status="restricted">  
    <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed  
    under a  
      Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License </  
    licence>  
  </availability>  
</publicationStmt>
```

Series and Notes Statements

The `<seriesStmt>` element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain `<title>`, `<idno>`, or `<respStmt>` elements.

The `<notesStmt>`, if used, contains one or more `<note>` elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

The Source Description

The `<sourceDesc>` is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

- `bibl` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `listBibl` (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Nort
on Facsimile,
  1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <author>CNN Network News</author>
    <title>News headlines</title>
    <date>12 Jun
      1989</date>
  </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

- `projectDesc` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.
- `samplingDecl` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the

rationale and methods used in selecting texts, or parts of a text, for inclusion in the resource.

- *editorialDecl* (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.
- *refsDecl* (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.
- *classDecl* (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

Project and Sampling Descriptions

Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDesc>:

```
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for
    use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.
  </p>
</projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<encodingDesc>
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of
    2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
</samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

correction

how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

normalization

the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

quotation

what has been done with quotation marks in the original -- have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

hyphenation

what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original -- have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

segmentation

how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-

units, graphemic strata, etc.

interpretation

what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<editorialDecl>
<p>The part of
    speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has no
    t been
    checked.</p>
<p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling
    checker.</p>
<p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th
    Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

Reference and Classification Declarations

The `<refsDecl>` element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```
<refsDecl>
<p>The <att>n</att>
    attribute on each <gi>div</gi> contains the canonical reference for each di
    vision in the
        form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the s
        ection number in
        arabic.</p>
<p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E5
    0.
</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The `<classDecl>` element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

- *taxonomy* (`taxonomy`) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.
- *bibl* (`bibliographic citation`) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- *category* (`category`) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
- *catDesc* (`category description`) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal `<textDesc>`.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```
<classDecl>
<taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
<bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings
</bibl>
</taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
<bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
<category xml:id="B.A">
<catDesc>Press
    Reportage</catDesc>
<category xml:id="B.A1">
    <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A2">
    <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A4">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A5">
    <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A6">
    <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.D">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.D1">
        <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.D2">
        <catDesc>Periodicals and
            tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
    </category>
</category>
```

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the `<catRef>` element within the `<textClass>` element, as

described in the next section below.

The Profile Description

The `<profileDesc>` element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

- *creation* (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.
- *langUsage* (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.
- *textClass* (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The `<creation>` element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```
<creation>
<date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
<name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The `<langUsage>` element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain `<language>` elements to document each particular language used:

- *language* (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

```
<langUsage>
<language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
<language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</
language>
<language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

The `<textClass>` element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the `<classDecl>` element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

- *classCode* (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.
- *catRef* (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.
- *keywords* (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying

the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the <classCode> element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

```
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>
```

The element <keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute *scheme* identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above :

```
<textClass>
<keywords scheme="#LCSH">
<list>
  <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</item>
  <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</item>
  <item>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</item>
</list>
</keywords>
</textClass>
```

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of <change> elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes *when* and *who* may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

```
<revisionDesc>
<change when="1991-03-06" who="#EMB">File format updated</change>
<change when="1990-05-25" who="#EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such *version control systems*, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.

List of Elements Described

The TEI Lite schema is a pure subset of TEI P5. In the following list of elements and classes used, some information, notably the examples, derives from the canonical definition for the element in TEI P5 and may therefore refer to elements or attributes not provided by TEI Lite. Note however that only the elements listed here are available within the TEI Lite schema. These specifications also refer to many attributes which although available in TEI Lite are not discussed in this tutorial for lack of space.

Elements

<TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [[4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype

Member of Contained by

model.describedResource

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

header: teiHeader

May contain

Note

textstructure: TEI text
As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see [5.7.2. Namespaces](#)). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0> as the value of the XML namespace declaration (xmlns), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <*TEI* version="4.8.1" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.

Example

```
<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document I
          imaginable</title>
        </titleStmt>
        <publicationStmt>
          <p>First published as part of TEI P
            2, this is the P5
            version using a namespace.</p>
        </publicationStmt>
        <sourceDesc>
          <p>No source: this is an original wo
            rk.</p>
        </sourceDesc>
      </fileDesc>
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <body>
        <p>This is about the shortest TEI do
          cument imaginable.</p>
      </body>
    </text>
  </TEI>
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
```

Example

```

<titleStmt>
  <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
</TEI>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
      <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.resource"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="TEI"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
      </sequence>
      <elementRef key="TEI"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element TEI
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,

```

```

tei_att.typed.attributes,
( tei_teiHeader, ( ( tei_model.resource+, tei_TEI* ) | tei_TEI+ ) )
}

```

<abbr>

<**abbr**> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. [Abbreviations and Their Expansions](#)]

Module
Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.typed
 - type
 - *@subtype*

type

(type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample suspensi

**values on
include:** (sus
pens
ion)
the
abbr
eviat
ion
provi
des
the
first
lette
r(s)
of
the
word
or
phra
se,
omit
ting
the
rema
inder

.

**contract
ion**

(cont
racti
on)
the
abbr
eviat
ion
omit
s
some
lette
r(s)
in
the
midd
le.

**brevigra
ph**
the

abbr
eviat
ion
com
prise
s a
speci
al
sym
bol
or
mark

.

**superscr
iptio
n**

(sup
erscr
iptio
n)
the
abbr
eviat
ion
inclus
es
writi
ng
abov
e the
line.

acronym

(acro
nym)
the
abbr
eviat
ion
com
prise
s the
initia
l
lette
rs of
the
word
s of

a
phra
se.

title

(title
) the
abbr
eviat
ion
is for
a
title
of
addr
ess
(Dr,
Ms,
Mr,
...)

**organiza
tion**

(org
aniz
ation
) the
abbr
eviat
ion
is for
the
nam
e of
an
orga
nizat
ion.

**geograp
hic**

(geo
grap
hic)
the
abbr
eviat
ion
is for
a

geog
raph
ic
nam
e.

Note The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method

used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see [6.2.](#)

Member of Contained by

model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
analysis: pc s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del desc
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label mentioned name note
num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref
reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage
term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg

May contain

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

If abbreviations are expanded silently,
this practice should be documented in
the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a
`<normalization>` element or a `<p>`.

Example

```
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organi
  zation</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OT
  AN</abbr>
</choice>
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanor
  um</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abbr
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<add>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3.]

Additions, Deletions, and Omissions

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.dimensions
 - @unit
 - @quantity
 - @extent
 - @precision
 - @scope
- att.ranging
 - @atLeast
 - @atMost
 - @min
 - @max
 - @confidence
- att.transcriptional
 - @status
 - @cause
 - @seq
- att.editLike
 - @evidence
 - @instant
- att.placement

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@place</i> • att.written • <i>@hand</i> • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@type</i> • <i>@subtype</i>
Member of	model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	<p>analysis: pc s w</p> <p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear</p> <p>figures: cell</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent licence</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>tagdocs: eg</p> <p>textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer</p> <p>analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w</p> <p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula table</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: anchor seg</p> <p>tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data</p>
May contain	<p>In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <i><add></i> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <i><corr></i> or <i><supplied></i> element are recommended.</p> <p>In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or</p>

reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
  tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<addrLine>

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. [Addresses](#) 2.2.4. [Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) 3.12.2.4. [Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend

Member of Contained by May contain

- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

model.addrPart

core: address

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val character data

Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Note

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 13
  5</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</
  addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
<addrLine>
  <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-
  0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addrLine { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<address>

<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [[3.6.2. Addresses](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

model.addressLike

model.publicationStmtPart.detail

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal publicationStmt sponsor

May contain

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: addrLine gap index lb milestone
name note pb rs
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor

Note

This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

Example

Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:

```
<address>
<street>via Marsala 24</street>
<postCode>40126</postCode>
<name>Bologna</name>
<name>Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic

```
<name>:
<address>
<street>via Marsala 24</street>
<postCode>40126</postCode>
<settlement>Bologna</settlement>
<country>Italy</country>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
<addrLine>Computing Center, MC 13
5</addrLine>
<addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</
addrLine>
<addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</
addrLine>
<addrLine>USA</addrLine>
```

Example

```
</address>
<address>
  <country key="FR"/>
  <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
  <postCode>69002</postCode>
  <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
  <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
  <street>
    <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
  </address>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element address
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  ( tei_model.global*, ( ( tei_model.add
rPart, tei_model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

<anchor>

<**anchor**> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](#) [17.5. Correspondence and Alignment](#)]

Module

Attributes

linking

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.milestoneLike
 analysis: s w
 core: abbr add addrLine address
 author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
 editor emph expan foreign gloss head
 hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned
 name note num orig p pubPlace
 publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
 sp speaker stage term time title
 unclear
 figures: cell figure table
 header: authority change classCode
 distributor edition extent funder
 language licence principal sponsor
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: argument back body
 byline closer dateline div docAuthor
 docDate docEdition docImprint
 docTitle epigraph front group
 imprimatur opener postscript salute
 signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
 Empty element
 On this element, the global *xml:id*
 attribute must be supplied to specify

**May contain
Note**

an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<empty/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element anchor
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    empty
}
```

<argument>

<argument> (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend

- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- model.divWrapper model.pLike.front
 model.titlepagePart
 core: lg list
 figures: figure table
 textstructure: back body div front
 group opener titlePage
 analysis: interp interpGrp
 core: bibl cit desc gap head index l
 label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p
 pb q sp stage
 figures: figure table
 linking: anchor
 tagdocs: eg
<argument>
<p>Monte Video — Maldonado — Excursion
 to R Polanco — Lazo and Bolas — Partridges —
 Absence of Trees — Deer — Capybara, or River Hog —
 Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant
 Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Caribbean Hawks —
 Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</p>
</argument>
- <content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.headLike"/>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>

```

</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element argument
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    (
        ( tei_model.global | tei_model.head
Like )*,
        ( ( tei_model.common, tei_model.gl
obal* )+ )
    )
}

```

<att>

<att> (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [\[23. Documentation Elements\]](#)

Module
Attributes

tagdocs

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

scheme

(scheme) supplies
an identifier for the
scheme in which
this name is
defined.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Sample TEI
values (Text
include: Enco
ding
Initi
ative
) this
attri
bute
is
part
of
the
TEI
sche
me.
*[Def
ault]*

DBK
(Doc
book
) this
attri
bute
is
part
of
the
Docb
ook
sche
me.

XX
(unk
now
n)
this
attri
bute
is
part
of an
unkn
own

sche
me.

imagine ry

(ima
gina
ry)
the
attri
bute
is
from
a
non-
exist
ent
sche
me,
for
illust
rativ
e
purp
oses
only

XHTML

(XHT
ML)
the
attri
bute
is
part
of
the
XHT
ML
lang
uage

XML

(XM
L)
the
attri
bute
is
part

of
the
XML
lang
uage

XI

(XI)
the
attri
butre
is
defin
ed in
the
xIncl
ude
sche
ma

Member of Contained by

[model.phrase.xml](#)

analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence

principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

XSD Name

As an alternative to using the *scheme* attribute a namespace prefix may be used. Where both *scheme* and a prefix are used, the prefix takes precedence.

<p>The TEI defines several <soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names include
<att>xml:id</att>, <att>rend</att>,

May contain Note

Example

<att>xml:lang</att>, <att>n</att>,
<att>xml:space</att>,
and <att>xml:base</att>; <att schem
e="XX">type</att> is not amongst the
m.</p>

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef key="teidata.name"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element att
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    attribute scheme { text }?,
    teidata.name
}
```

<author>

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement](#)]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.datable
 - @period
- att.datable.w3c

- *@when*
- att.naming
- *@role*
- *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
- *@key*
- *@ref*

Member of Contained by

May contain

model.respLike
 core: bibl
 header: editionStmt titleStmt
 analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
 core: abbr add address choice cit corr
 date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
 graphic hi index lb mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
 ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
 unclear
 figures: figure formula
 header: idno
 linking: anchor seg
 tagdocs: att code gi ident val
 character data

Note

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

<author>British Broadcasting Corpora

```

tion</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine
Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (163
4-1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foun
dation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</
  persName>
  and
  <persName>John Fletcher</
  persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broad
  casting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 N
  etwork
</author>
```

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element author
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<authority>

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

- *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*

**Example
Content model**

```
model.publicationStmtPart.agency
header: publicationStmt
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
mentioned milestone name note num
pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
<authority>John Smith</authority>
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li
mited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element authority
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<availability>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

Module Attributes

- header
 - att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.declarable
 - *@default*

status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Legal values are: free
(free) the text
is
freel
y
avail
able.

unknow n
(unk
now
n)
the

status of the text is unknown.

restricted

(restricted)
the text is not freely available.

Member of

model.biblPart

Contained by

model.publicationStmtPart.detail

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

May contain

core: p

header: licence

Note

A consistent format should be adopted

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a
```

copy

of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal

in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell

copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is

furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>

<p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in

all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>

<p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR

IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,

FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE

AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER

LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,

OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN

THE SOFTWARE.</p>

</licence>

</availability>

<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">

<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:availability"/>

</sch:pattern>

<content>

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">

<classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>

Schematron

Content model

```

<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element availability
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    attribute status { "free" | "unknown"
    | "restricted" }?,
    ( tei_model.availabilityPart | tei_mod
    el.pLike )+
}
```

<back>

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [[4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declaring
 - @decls

textstructure: text

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: divGen gap head index lb list

listBibl milestone note p pb

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

Contained by May contain

textstructure: argument byline closer
dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph postscript signed titlePage
titlePart trailer

Note

Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the `<back>` and `<front>` elements are identical.

Example

```
<back>
<div type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ing
  enuous Confession</head>
  <p>TO shew the Depravity of human
  Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be
  misled by Trinkets
  and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-
  Shoes does acknowledge, that after sh
  e became rich, she
  had like to have been, too fond of M
  oney
  <!-- .... -->
  </p>
  </div>
  <!-- ... -->
  <div type="epistle">
    <head>A letter from the Printer, whi
    ch he desires may be inserted</head>
    <salute>Sir.</salute>
    <p>I have done with your Copy, so yo
    u may return it to the Vatican, if you pl
    ease;

  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
  </div>
  <div type="advert">
    <head>The Books usually read by the
    Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these a
    nd are sold at Mr
    Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in S
    t Paul's Church-yard.</head>
    <list>
      <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Pri
      ce 1d.</item>
      <item n="2">The History of Giles Gi
```

```

ngerbread, 1d.</item>
<!-- ... -->
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection
    of Travels, selected from the Writers of
    all Nations,
        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
    </list>
</div>
<div type="advert">
    <head>By the KING's Royal Patent, A
    re sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible an
    d Sun in St.
        Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
    <list>
        <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders fo
        r Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds
        , &c. 2s.
            6d</item>
        <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pi
        lls, 1s.</item>
    <!-- ... -->
    </list>
</div>
</back>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0">
    <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        " minOccurs="0">
            <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
            <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
        </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>

```

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
           minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
             minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element back
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    (
      tei_model.frontPart
      | tei_model.pLike.front
      | tei_model.pLike
      | tei_model.listLike
      | tei_model.global
    )?,
    (
      (
        tei_model.div1Like,
        ( tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.div1Like | tei_model.global )*
      )
      | (
        tei_model.divLike,
        ( tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.divLike | tei_model.global )*
      )
    )?,
    (

```

```

        (
            tei_model.divBottomPart,
            ( tei_model.divBottomPart | tei_
model.global )*
        )?
    )
}

```

<bibl>

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

[[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](#) [2.2.7. The Source Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
 - *@default*
- att.docStatus
 - *@status*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*
- att.typed

**Member of
Contained by**

- *@type*
- *@subtype*

model.biblLike model.biblPart
core: add bibl cit corr del desc emph
head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref
reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc
taxonomy
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del editor
emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index
lb mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher q
ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic
soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure
header: availability distributor edition
extent funder idno principal sponsor
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code ident
character data

Contains *phrase-level* elements,
together with any combination of
elements from the model.biblPart class

Note

Example

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Fe
minist Companion to Literature in Engl
ish (Yale,

1990)</bibl>

Example

<bibl>

<title level="a">The Interesting story
of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,
<title>The Penny Histories</title>.

<publisher>OUP</publisher>

<date>1968</date>.

</bibl>

<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type="article"

xml:id="carlin_2003">

<author>

Example

```

<name>
  <surname>Carlin</surname>
  (<forename>Claire</
  forename>)</name>
</author>,
<title level="a">The Staging of Impot
ence : France's last
  congrès</title> dans
<bibl type="monogr">
  <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : s
  tudies in honor of Ronald W.
    Tobin</title>, éd.
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Claire</forename>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
    </name>
  </editor> et
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Kathleen</forename>
      <surname>Wine</surname>
    </name>
  </editor>,
  <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</
  pubPlace>,
  <publisher>Rookwood Press</
  publisher>,
  <date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
</bibl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:bi
bl"/> </sch:pattern>

```

Schematron

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>

```

</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.highlighted
        | tei_model.pPart.data
        | tei_model.pPart.edit
        | tei_model.segLike
        | tei_model.ptrLike
        | tei_model.biblPart
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}
```

<biblScope>

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility

- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.citing
 - *@unit*
 - *@from*
 - *@to*

**Member of
Contained by**

May contain

model.imprintPart

core: bibl

header: seriesStmt

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note

When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute may be used without *to*; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.

It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.

Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope>
<biblScope from="12" to="34" unit="page"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.citing.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<body>

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declaring
 - @decls

textstructure: text

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head

index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone

note p pb q sp stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer

dateline div docAuthor docDate

epigraph opener postscript salute

signed trailer

Example

```
<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes ua
  rd</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidan
  c</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gi
  huaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uar
  d</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istu
  d carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    >
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    >
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
          "minOccurs="0">
```

```

<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
" minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
" minOccurs="1">
<alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="0">
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d" minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d" minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d" minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounde
d"

```

```

        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"
      "/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element body
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.global*,
    ( ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divTop )* )? ),
    (
      ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )?
    ),
    (
      (
        ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
      )
    |
    (
      (
        tei_model.div1Like,
        ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*+
      )
    )
  |
  (
    ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model.common ), tei_model.global* )+
  ),
  (

```

```

(
  (
    tei_model.divLike,
    ( tei_model.global | tei_mo
del.divGenLike )*
)
) +
|
|
(
  tei_model.div1Like,
  ( tei_model.global | tei_mo
del.divGenLike )*
)
) +
)
)?
)
),
( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )*)
)
}

```

<byline>

<byline> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [[4.2.2. Openers and Closers](#) [4.5. Front Matter](#)]

Module
Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source
 - @*source*

Member of

Contained by

May contain

Note

Example

Example

Example

Example

Content model

- att.cmc

- *@generatedBy*

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

model.titlepagePart

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div

front group opener titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docAuthor

character data

The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who co
ntinued all the
while in London. Never made publick
before.</byline>

<byline>Written from her own MEMO
RANDUMS</byline>

<byline>By George Jones, Political Edi
tor, in Washington</byline>

<byline>BY

<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</
docAuthor>

Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)

Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>

<content>

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">

<textNode/>

<classRef key="model.gLike"/>

```

<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element byline
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_docAuthor
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}

```

<catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>.

[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical

Contained by
May contain

- *@key*
- *@ref*

header: category
core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name
num ptr q ref rs soCalled term time
title
header: idno
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
<catDesc>
 <textDesc n="novel">
 <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
 <constitution type="single"/>
 <derivation type="original"/>
 <domain type="art"/>
 <factuality type="fiction"/>
 <interaction type="none"/>
 <preparedness type="prepared"/>
 <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
 <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
 </textDesc>
</catDesc>

Content model

```
<content>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <textNode/>
        <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
        <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>
    </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
    model.catDescPart )*
}
```

<catRef>

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.pointing
 - @targetLang
 - @target
 - @evaluate

scheme

identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by
May contain
Note

header: textClass
Empty element
The *scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one

taxonomy has been declared.

Example

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
<category xml:id="news">
<catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="prov">
<catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="sales2">
<catDesc>Low to average annual sal
es</catDesc>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<empty/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element catRef
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    attribute scheme { text }?,
    empty
}
```

<category>

<category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
[\[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration\]](#)

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next

Contained by
May contain

Example

Example

Example

- *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*

header: category taxonomy

core: desc gloss

header: catDesc category

<category xml:id="b1">

<catDesc>Prose reportage</

catDesc>

</category>

<category xml:id="b2">

<catDesc>Prose </catDesc>

<category xml:id="b11">

<catDesc>journalism</catDesc>

</category>

<category xml:id="b12">

<catDesc>fiction</catDesc>

</category>

</category>

<category xml:id="LIT">

<catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura pi
ękna</catDesc>

<catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</

catDesc>

<category xml:id="LPROSE">

<catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</

catDesc>

<catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</

catDesc>

</category>

<category xml:id="LPOETRY">

<catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</

catDesc>

<catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</

catDesc>

</category>

<category xml:id="LDRAMAT">

<catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</

catDesc>

```

<catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</
catDesc>
</category>
</category>
```

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate>
<elementRef key="catDesc"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="1"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.descLike"/>
<elementRef key="equiv"/>
<elementRef key="gloss"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
<elementRef key="category"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element category
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.datcat.attributes,
    (
        ( tei_catDesc+ | ( tei_model.descLi
ke | equiv | tei_gloss )* ),
        tei_category*
    )
}
```

<cell>

<cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table. [[15.1.1. TEI Tables](#)]

Module

Attributes

figures

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs

- *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
 - *@role*
 - *@rows*
 - *@cols*

Contained by May contain

figures: row

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<row>

<cell role="label">General conduct</cell>

<cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality

and inattention to duties</cell>

</row>

<content>

<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>

</content>

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration

element cell

{

tei_att.global.attributes,
tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,

```
        tei_macro.specialPara  
    }
```

<change>

<**change**> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file.
[\[2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 12.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions\]](#)

Module
Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source
 - @*source*
 - att.ascribed
 - @*who*
 - att.datable
 - @*period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - @*when*
 - att.docStatus
 - @*status*
 - att.typed
 - @*type*
 - @*subtype*

target

(target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

Status Optional
Datatype 1-∞

Contained by **May contain**

occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespace

header: revisionDesc
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index i label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data

The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a *<respStmt>* or *<person>* element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.

It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="public" when="2008-02-02"
        who="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</
```

```

change>
<change status="draft" when="2008-01-02"
      who="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</change>
<change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
      who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
<change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
<profileDesc>
<creation>
<listChange>
<change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
<change notBefore="1880-12-09"
      xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly
      using green ink</change>
<change notBefore="1881-02-13"
      xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections
      as
      supplied to printer.</change>
</listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>

```

Example

```

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

```

Content model

```

element change
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + } }?,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

<choice>

<choice> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

model.pPart.editorial

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del desc
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label mentioned name note
num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref
reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage
term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence

principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg

Member of Contained by

May contain

Note

sic unclear
linking: seg

Because the children of a `<choice>` element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.

Note also that `<choice>` elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the `<app>` element and associated elements discussed in section [13.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses](#) should be preferred.

Example

An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

`<p>`Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of `<choice>`
`<sic>`1724`</sic>`
`<corr>`1728`</corr>`
`</choice>` of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
`<choice>`
`<orig>`favour`</orig>`
`<reg>`favor`</reg>`
`</choice>.</p>`

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="2">
<classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
```

```
<elementRef key="choice"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element choice
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    ( tei_model.choicePart | tei_choice ),
    ( tei_model.choicePart | tei_choice ),
    ( tei_model.choicePart | tei_choice )*
}
```

<cit>

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

[[3.3.3. Quotation](#) [4.3.1. Grouped Texts](#) [10.3.5.1. Examples](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype

model.quoteLike

Member of

Contained by

analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author
biblScope cit corr del desc editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
mentioned name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
soCalled sp speaker stage term title
unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument body div
docAuthor docDate docEdition
epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc
core: bibl cit gap graphic index lb
listBibl milestone note pb ptr q ref
figures: figure formula
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg

Example

```
<cit>
  <q>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,
    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</q>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cit
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.biblLike
        | tei_model.egLike
        | tei_model.entryPart
        | tei_model.global
        | tei_model.graphicLike
        | tei_model.ptrLike
        | tei_model.attributable
        | tei_pc
        | tei_q
    )+
}
```

<classCode>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

scheme

identifies the classification system in use, as

Contained by May contain	defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource. Status Required Datatype teidata.p ointer
---	--

Contained by

May contain

Example

Content model

```

header: textClass
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
mentioned milestone name note num
pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
<classCode scheme="http://
www.udc.org">410</classCode>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element classCode
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { text },
  tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}

```

<classDecl>

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs

Member of
Contained by
May contain
Example

- *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*

model.encodingDescPart
header: encodingDesc
header: taxonomy
<classDecl>
 <taxony xml:id="LCSH">
 <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
 </taxony>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
 <term>Political science</term>
 <term>United States -- Politics and government --
 Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
 </keywords>
</textClass>

Content model

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
    = "1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element classDecl { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_taxonomy+ }
```

<closer>

<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, bylines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module
Attributes

textstructure
• att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.divBottomPart

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front
group postscript

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: byline dateline salute

signed

character data

<div type="letter">

<p> perhaps you will favour me with
a sight of it when convenient.</p>

<closer>

<salute>I remain, &c. &c.<
</salute>

May contain

Example

Example

```
<signed>H. Colburn</signed>
</closer>
</div>
<div type="chapter">
<p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like
mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
</closer>
<dateline>
<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-
Paris,</name>
<date>1914-1921</date>
</dateline>
</closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<elementRef key="byline"/>
<elementRef key="signed"/>
<elementRef key="dateline"/>
<elementRef key="salute"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element closer
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_byline
        | tei_signed
        | tei_dateline
        | tei_salute
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}
```

<code>

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language. [23.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

Module

Attributes

tagdocs

- att.global
- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*

lang

(formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.word

Member of Contained by

model.emphLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

May contain Example

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
Character data only
`<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1
Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>`

Content model

```
<content>  
<textNode/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element code { tei_att.global.attributes  
, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

<corr>

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [[3.5.1. Apparent Errors](#)]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@generatedBy</i> • att.editLike • <i>@evidence</i> • <i>@instant</i> • att.typed • <i>@type</i> • <i>@subtype</i>
Member of	model.choicePart
Contained by	<p>model.pPart.transcriptional analysis: pc s w core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear figures: cell header: change distributor edition extent licence linking: seg tagdocs: eg textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear figures: figure formula table header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data</p>
May contain	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <i><corr></i> may be used alone: I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <i><corr></i>can we<i></corr></i> prove or disprove anyone's theories? It is also possible, using the <i><choice></i> and <i><sic></i> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:</p>
Example	
Example	

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —
how <choice>
<sic>we can</sic>
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element corr
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<creation>

<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.

[[2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description](#)]

Module

header

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

Member of
Contained by
May contain

- att.datable
 - @period
 - att.datable.w3c
 - @when

model.profileDescPart

header: profileDesc

core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name
num ptr q ref rs soCalled term time
title

header: idno

tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

The `<creation>` element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.

It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the `<listChange>` element. It should not be confused with the `<publicationStmt>` element, which records date and place of publication.

Note

Example

Example

Content model

```
<creation>
<date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
<creation>
<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 19
88</date>
</creation>
```

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
/>
<elementRef key="listChange"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element creation
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | list
Change )*
}

```

<date>

<**date**> (date) contains a date in any format. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.6. The Revision Description](#) [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [16.2.3. The Setting Description](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.dimensions
 - *@unit*
 - *@quantity*
 - *@extent*
 - *@precision*
 - *@scope*
 - att.ranging

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@atLeast</i> • <i>@atMost</i> • <i>@min</i> • <i>@max</i> • <i>@confidence</i> • att.editLike <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@evidence</i> • <i>@instant</i> • att.typed <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@type</i> • <i>@subtype</i>
Member of	model.dateLike
Contained by	model.publicationStmtPart.detail analysis: s core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear figures: cell figDesc header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor linking: seg tagdocs: eg textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code gi ident val character data
May contain	
Example	<date when="1980-02">early Februar y 1980</date>
Example	Given on the <date when="1977-06- 12">Twelfth Day

Example

of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
<date when="1990-09">September 19 90</date>

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element date
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
}
```

<dateline>

<dateline> (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking

- *@corresp*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front
core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div
front group opener

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docDate

character data

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1
592</dateline>

<div type="chapter">

<p>

<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like
mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>

<closer>

<dateline>

<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-
Paris,</name>

<date>1914-1921</date>

</dateline>

</closer>

</div>

Example

Example

Content model

<content>

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="docDate"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element dateline
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_model.global
        | tei_docDate
    )*
}

```

<**del**>

**** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility

- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
 - *@unit*
 - *@quantity*
 - *@extent*
 - *@precision*
 - *@scope*
 - att.ranging
 - *@atLeast*
 - *@atMost*
 - *@min*
 - *@max*
 - *@confidence*
- att.transcriptional
 - *@status*
 - *@cause*
 - *@seq*
 - att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*
 - att.placement
 - *@place*
 - att.written
 - *@hand*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.pPart.transcriptional

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope corr date del editor emph
 expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
 lg mentioned name note num orig p
 pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled speaker stage term time title
 unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition
 extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline

docAuthor docDate docEdition

May contain

docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note

This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see [22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](#)).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between `` and `<surplus>` on the one hand and `<gap>` or `<unclear>` on the other. `` indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. `<gap>` or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections [12.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription](#) and [12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](#) for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```
<l>
<del rend="overtyped">Mein</del>
Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="p
primary">schwebt</del>
weht der Wind
</l>
<del rend="overstrike">
<gap quantity="5" reason="illegible"
unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Example

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element del
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
    tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

```
        tei_macro.paraContent  
    }
```

<desc>

<**desc**> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [[23.4.1. Description of Components](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source
 - @*source*
 - att.cmc
 - @*generatedBy*
 - att.translatable
 - @*versionDate*
 - att.typed
 - type
 - @*subtype*

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e

numerate
d
Suggest deprecated
ionInfo
values (dep
include: recat
ion
infor
mati
on)
This
elem
ent
desc
ribes
why
or
how
its
pare
nt
elem
ent
is
bein
g
depr
ecat
ed,
typic
ally
inclus
ing
reco
mme
ndati
ons
for
alter
nate
enco
ding.
<dataSpec ident="teidata.point"
module="tei"
validUntil="2050-
02-25">

```
<desc type="depr  
ecationInfo"  
versionDate="201  
8-09-14"  
xml:lang="en">S  
everal standards b  
odies, including NI  
ST in the USA,  
strongly recomm  
end against ending  
the representation  
of a number  
with a decimal po  
int. So instead of <  
q>3.</q> use eithe  
r <q>3</q>  
or <q>3.0</  
q>.</desc>  
<!-- ... -->  
</dataSpec>
```

Member of Contained by

model.descLike model.labelLike
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: add corr del desc emph gap
graphic head hi item l lg list listBibl
note orig p q ref reg sic stage title
unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: category change licence
taxonomy
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date
desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label
list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q
ref rs soCalled stage term time title
figures: table
header: idno

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

When used in a specification element
such as <elementSpec>, TEI
convention requires that this be
expressed as a finite clause, begining
with an active verb.

Note

Example

Example of a <desc> element inside a documentation element.

```
<dataSpec ident="teidata.point"
  module="tei">
  <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
    xml:lang="en">defines the data type
    used to express a point in cartesian sp
    ace.</desc>
  <content>
    <dataRef name="token"
      restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-
      9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
  </content>
  <!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

Example

Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</
  placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
  <!-- ... -->
</place>
```

Schematron

A <desc> with a *type* of *deprecationInfo* should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.

```
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq
  'deprecationInfo']">
  <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Info
  rmation about a deprecation should
  only be present in a specification
  element that is being deprecated: that
  is, only an element that has a
  @validUntil attribute should have a
  child <desc
  type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert
> </sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedConte
  nt"/>
```

</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element desc
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.translatable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
    tei_macro.limitedContent
}
```

<distributor>

<distributor> (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

Module
Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.canonical
 - @key
 - @ref

Member of

model.imprintPart

Contained by

model.publicationStmtPart.agency

May contain

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</
distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</
distributor>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element distributor
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<div>

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

Example

- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.divLike
 - *@org*
 - *@sample*
 - att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

model.divLike

textstructure: back body div front

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head

index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone

note p pb q sp stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer

dateline div docAuthor docDate

epigraph opener postscript salute

signed trailer

<body>

<div type="part">

<head>Fallacies of Authority</

head>

<p>The subject of which is Authority
in various shapes, and the object, to re
press all

exercise of the reasoning faculty.</

p>

<div n="1" type="chapter">

<head>The Nature of Authority</

head>

<p>With reference to any proposed
measures having for their object the gr
eatest

happiness of the greatest number [

```

...]</p>
<div n="1.1" type="section">
<head>Analysis of Authority</head>
<p>What on any given occasion is t
he legitimate weight or influence to be
attached to
    authority [...] </p>
</div>
<div n="1.2" type="section">
<head>Appeal to Authority, in What
Cases Fallacious.</head>
<p>Reference to authority is open t
o the charge of fallacy when [...] </p>
</div>
</div>
</div>
</body>
<sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:div">
<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText"> Abstract model violation:
Metrical lines may not contain higher-
level structural elements such as div,
unless div is a descendant of
floatingText. </sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="tei:div">
<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or
ancestor::tei:ab) and
not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)">
Abstract model violation: p and ab may
not contain higher-level structural
elements such as div, unless div is a
descendant of floatingText.
</sch:report> </sch:rule>

```

Schematron

Schematron

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded
"
minOccurs="1">

```

```

<alternate>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.divGenLike"
/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccu
rs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
    minOccurs="1">
      <alternate maxOccurs="1"
        minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/
>
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOcc
urs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounde
d"
    minOccurs="0">
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike
"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOcc
urs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="0"/>
  </sequence>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.divLike.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al )*,
        (
            (
                (
                    (
                        ( tei_model.divLike | tei_m
odel.divGenLike ),
                        tei_model.global*
                    )+
                )
            |
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | tei_model
.common ), tei_model.global* )+ ),
            (
                (
                    ( tei_model.divLike | tei_
model.divGenLike ),
                    tei_model.global*
                )*
            )
        )
    ),
    ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_mo
del.global* )* )
)??
)
}
```

<divGen>

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.9.2. Index Entries]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.typed
 - type
 - *@subtype*

type specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.
Derived from att.typed
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
 numerate
 d
Sample **index**
values an
include: inde
 x is
 to be
 gene
 rate
 d
 and
 inser
 ted
 at
 this
 point

Member of
Contained by
May contain
Note

toc	a table of contents
figlist	a list of figures
tablist	a list of tables
Note	Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

model.divGenLike model.frontPart
textstructure: back body div front
core: head
This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing

software.

Example

One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```
<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Example

Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
  <!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element divGen
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
```

```
attribute type { text }?,  
tei_model.headLike*  
}
```

<docAuthor>

<**docAuthor**> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.canonical
 - @key
 - @ref
 - att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

Member of

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front
model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div

front group titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

May contain

figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the `<docAuthor>` element may be used whether the `<byline>` element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with `<byline>` without `<docAuthor>`.)

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remo
    te Nations of the World, in Four
    Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gul
  liver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
  and then a Captain of several Ships<
  /byline>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<docDate>

`<docDate>` (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

textstructure

Attributes

- att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*

Member of

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

Contained by

model.titlepagePart

May contain

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body dateline div

docImprint front group titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require

Note

specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press  
, <docDate>1987</docDate>  
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docDate  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.datable.attributes,  
  tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

<docEdition>

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

Member of Contained by

model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data
Cf. the <edition> element of
bibliographic citation. As usual, the
shorter name has been given to the
more frequent element.

Note

Example

<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docEdition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
```

<docImprint>

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition

Member of Contained by May contain

- *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*

model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
textstructure: back front titlePage
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr
pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
textstructure: docDate
character data
Cf. the <imprint> element of
bibliographic citations. As with title,
author, and editions, the shorter name
is reserved for the element likely to be
used more often.

Note

Example

<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press
, 1987</docImprint>
Imprints may be somewhat more
complex:
<docImprint>
 <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
 Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
 at
 <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</
 pubPlace>;
 <name>J. Roberts</name> in
 <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
 <name>A. Dodd</name> without
 <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
 and <name>J. Graves</name> in
 <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</
 pubPlace>
 <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>

Content model

<content>

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
<elementRef key="docDate"/>
<elementRef key="publisher"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element docImprint
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_pubPlace
        | tei_docDate
        | tei_publisher
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}

```

<docTitle>

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [\[4.6. Title Pages\]](#)

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

- *@cert*
- *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*

model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
textstructure: back front titlePage
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: titlePart

Example

```
<docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIA
D, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PR
OLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</
titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
    <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.global"
            maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
            ="0"/>
        <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
            minOccurs="1">
            <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"
                maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
                s="0"/>
        </sequence>
    </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    ( tei_model.global*, ( ( tei_titlePart, t
    ei_model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

<edition>

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

[[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

Member of Contained by

model.biblPart

core: bibl

header: editionStmt

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

<edition>First edition <date>Oct 199

0</date>

</edition>

<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>

Example

<content>

<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>

Content model

</content>

Schema Declaration

element edition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }

<editionStmt>

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2. The File Description](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

Contained by May contain

header: fileDesc

core: author editor p respStmt
header: edition funder principal
sponsor

Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
  </p>
</editionStmt>
```

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="edition"/>
      <classRef key="model.respLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_edition, tei_
  model.respLike* ) )
}
```

<editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#)]

Module Attributes

- core
 - att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*

- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.naming
 - *@role*
 - *@nymRef*
 - att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*

Member of Contained by

model.respLike
core: bibl
header: editionStmt seriesStmt
titleStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

A consistent format should be adopted.
Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron
Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John W
alsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Ann
e Baillot</editor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element editor

```
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.naming.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<editorialDecl>

<**editorialDecl**> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](#) [2.3. The Encoding Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source
 - @*source*
 - att.declarable
 - @*default*

Member of
Contained by
May contain
Example

model.encodingDescPart

header: encodingDesc

core: p

<editorialDecl>

 <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using

 Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary</p>

 <p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing quotation marks converted to & cdq;. </p>

Schematron

```
</editorialDecl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde"
value="tei:editorialDecl"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<classRef key="model.pLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<eg>

<eg> (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [23.5. Element Specifications 23.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

Module

tagdocs

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

Member of Contained by

model.egLike

core: add cit corr del desc emph head
hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic stage

title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

May contain

If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific `<egXML>` element.

Example

```
<p>The
<gi>term</gi> element is declared us
ing the following syntax:
<eg><![CDATA[<!ELEMENT term (%
phrase.content;)]>]]</eg>
</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element eg { tei_att.global.attributes, t
ei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<emph>

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and

Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

model.emphLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence

principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

Member of Contained by

May contain

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
 corr date del desc emph expan foreign
 gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
 list listBibl mentioned milestone name
 note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled stage term time title unclear
 figures: figure formula table
 header: idno
 linking: anchor seg
 tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
 character data
 You took the car and did <emph>what
 </emph>?!!
 <q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.
 <q>
 <emph>What
 does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
 </q>

Example

Example

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
  
```

Schema Declaration

```

element emph
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
  
```

<encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. [The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration

- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

```
model.teiHeaderPart
header: teiHeader
core: p
header: classDecl editorialDecl
projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl
<encodingDesc>
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical
information only. All
hyphenation, punctuation, and variant
spellings normalized. No
formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.encodingDesc
Part"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

```
element encodingDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_model.encodingDescPart | tei_m
odel.pLike )+
}
```

<epigraph>

<epigraph> (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments,

[Epigraphs, and Postscripts](#) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#) [4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

Member of

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front
model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front

group opener titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap index l label lb
lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp
stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

<epigraph xml:lang="la">

<cit>

<bibl>Lucret.</bibl>

<quote>

<l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>

<l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora
Musae.</l>

</quote>

</cit>

Example

Content model

```
</epigraph>  
<content>  
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
minOccurs="0">  
  <classRef key="model.common"/>  
  <classRef key="model.global"/>  
</alternate>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element epigraph  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  ( tei_model.common | tei_model.glob  
al )*  
}
```

<expan>

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.6.5. [Abbreviations and Their Expansions](#)]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.editLike
 - @evidence

Member of Contained by

- *@instant*

model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del desc
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label mentioned name note
num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref
reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage
term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition

docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

The content of this element should be
the expanded abbreviation, usually
(but not always) a complete word or
phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by
the transcr module may be used to
mark up sequences of letters supplied
within such an expansion.

If abbreviations are expanded silently,
this practice should be documented in
the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a
`<normalization>` element or a `<p>`.

May contain

Note

Example

The address is Southmoor

`<choice>`

`<expan>Road</expan>`

Example

```
<abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
<choice xml:lang="la">
<abbr>Imp</abbr>
<expan>Imp<ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element expan
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<extent>

<extent> (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 11.7.1. Object Description]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source

Member of
Contained by

May contain

Example

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration

element extent { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }

<figDesc>

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [15.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module

Attributes

- @source
- model.biblPart
core: bibl
header: fileDesc
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
The <measure> element may be used to supply normalized or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.
<extent>
 <measure quantity="4.2" unit="MiB">About four megabytes</measure>
 <measure quantity="245" unit="page">245 pages of source material</measure>
</extent>

<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

- figures
- att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*

Contained by May contain

figures: figure

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: idno

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data

This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent *<figure>* element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

Note

Example

```
<figure>
<graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
<head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
<figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
```

</content>

Schema Declaration

element figDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.limitedContent }

<figure>

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [[15.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images](#)]

Module Attributes

figures

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.placement
 - @place
- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype
- att.written
 - @hand

Member of Contained by

model.global

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address

author bibl biblScope cit corr date del

editor emph expan foreign gloss head

hi item l label lg list mentioned name

note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

May contain

ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker
stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit desc gap graphic head
index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone
note p pb q sp stage
figures: figDesc figure formula table
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument byline closer
dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph
postscript salute signed trailer

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic scale="0.5"
    url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"/>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
</alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
</alternate>
```

</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element figure
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.headLike
        | tei_model.common
        | tei_figDesc
        | tei_model.graphicLike
        | tei_model.global
        | tei_model.divBottom
    )*
}
```

<fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

Contained by May contain

header: teiHeader

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt

publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc
titleStmt

Note

The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="editionStmt"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    </sequence>
    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="notesStmt"
      minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
```

```

<elementRef key="sourceDesc"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element fileDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      tei_titleStmt,
      tei_editionStmt?,
      tei_extent?,
      tei_publicationStmt,
      tei_seriesStmt*,
      tei_notesStmt?
    ),
    tei_sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

<foreign>

<**foreign**> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [[3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - @*rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @*cert*
 - @*resp*
 - att.global.source

Member of **Contained by**

- *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- model.emphLike
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

May contain

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in [6.1. Language Identification](#).

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the

language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

This is
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
philosophicus</foreign>?

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<formula>

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [15.2.
[Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions](#)]

Module

Attributes

figures

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source

Member of
Contained by

- *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.notated
 - *@notation*
- model.graphicLike
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author
biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
mentioned name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
soCalled speaker stage term time title
unclear
figures: cell figure formula table
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

May contain

Example

Example

Example

Content model

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi r="sup">2</hi></formula>
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>

<content>
```

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
>
<classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element formula
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.notated.attributes,
    ( text | tei_model.graphicLike | tei_m
odel.hiLike )*
}

```

<front>

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

Module Attributes

- textstructure
 - att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.declaring
 - @decls

Contained by

textstructure: text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: divGen gap head index lb listBibl
milestone note p pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer
dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph postscript salute signed
titlePage titlePart trailer

Note

Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the `<front>` and `<back>` elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
<epigraph>
  <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis
  ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
    pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
  <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί
    θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q x
  ml:lang="grc">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
</epigraph>
<div type="dedication">
  <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">
  il miglior fabbro.</q>
  </p>
</div>
</front>
<front>
<div type="dedication">
  <p>To our three selves</p>
</div>
<div type="preface">
  <head>Author's Note</head>
  <p>All the characters in this book ar
  e purely imaginary, and if the
    author has used names that may su
    ggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently. ...</
  p>
</div>
</front>
<front>
<div type="abstract">
```

Example

Example

<div>
<head> BACKGROUND:</head>
<p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
</div>
<div>
<head> OBJECTIVE:</head>
<p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
</div>
<div>
<head> DESIGN:</head>
<p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.
Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed with five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m²) greater than or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity and food insecurity.</p>

</div>
<div>
<head> RESULTS:</head>
<p>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to 2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%

CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</p>
</div>
<div>
<head> CONCLUSIONS:</head>
<p>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate food-insecurity measures in children.</p>
</div>
</div>
</front>

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<alternate>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
">
    minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
">
    minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>

```

```

        </alternate>
        </sequence>
        </alternate>
        <sequence minOccurs="0">
            <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
            <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
                " minOccurs="0">
                <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
            >
                <classRef key="model.global"/>
            </alternate>
            </sequence>
            </sequence>
            </sequence>
        </content>
    
```

Schema Declaration

```

element front
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    (
        (
            tei_model.frontPart
            | tei_model.pLike
            | tei_model.pLike.front
            | tei_model.global
        )*, 
        (
            (
                (
                    (
                        tei_model.div1Like,
                        (
                            tei_model.div1Like
                            | tei_model.frontPart
                            | tei_model.global
                        )*
                    )
                | (
                    tei_model.divLike,
                    (
                        tei_model.divLike
                        | tei_model.frontPart
                        | tei_model.global
                    )*
                )
            )
        )
    )
}

```

```

),
(
(
    tei_model.divBottom,
    ( tei_model.divBottom | tei_
model.global )*
)?
)
)
)
}

```

<funder>

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*

Member of Contained by

model.respLike

core: bibl

May contain

header: editionStmt titleStmt
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
mentioned milestone name note num
pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
Funders provide financial support for a
project; they are distinct from
sponsors (see element <sponsor>),
who provide intellectual support and
authority.

Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for  
the Humanities, an independent federa  
l agency</funder>  
<funder>Directorate General XIII of th  
e Commission of the European Commu  
nities</funder>  
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Found  
ation</funder>  
<funder>The Social Sciences and Hu  
manities Research Council of Canada<  
/funder>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li  
mited"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element funder  
{  
    tei_att.global.attributes,  
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,  
    tei_att.datable.attributes,  
    tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited  
}
```

<gap>

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](#)]

Module Attributes

core	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• att.global<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@xml:id</i>• <i>@n</i>• <i>@xml:lang</i>• <i>@xml:space</i>• att.global.analytic<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@ana</i>• att.global.facs<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@fac</i>• att.global.linking<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@corresp</i>• <i>@next</i>• <i>@prev</i>• att.global.rendition<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@rend</i>• att.global.responsibility<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@cert</i>• <i>@resp</i>• att.global.source<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>@source</i>
reason	(reason) gives the reason for omission. Status Optional Datatype 1-∞ occurrence

ces
of teidata
.enumerated
separate
d by
white space

Suggest cancell ed

values (can
include: celle
d)

deleted (dele
ted)

editorial (edit
orial) for
featu
res
omit
ted
from
trans
cript
ion
due
to
edito
rial
polic
y

illegible (illeg
ible)

inaudibl e (inau
dible
)

irreleva nt (irrel
evant)

**samplin
g**
(sam
pling
)

agent (agent) in the case
of text omitted
because of
damage,
categorizes the
cause of the
damage, if it can
be identified.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Sample **rubbing**
values (rub
include: bing)
dam
age
resul
ts
from
rubb
ing
of
the
leaf
edge
s

mildew
(mild
ew)
dam
age
resul
ts
from
mild
ew
on
the
leaf
surfa
ce

smoke
(smo
ke)
dam
age
resul
ts
from
smo
ke

**Member of
Contained by**

model.global.edit
analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label lg list mentioned name
note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker
stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
core: desc

**May contain
Note**

The *<gap>*, *<unclear>*, and ** core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the *<damage>* and *<supplied>* elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](#) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The *<gap>* tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation

that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

Example

Example

Example

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.descLike"/>
<classRef key="model.certLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gap
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.timed.attributes,
    attribute reason
    {
        list
        {
            (
                "cancelled"
                | "deleted"
                | "editorial"
                | "illegible"
                | "inaudible"
                | "irrelevant"
                | "sampling"
            )+
        }
    }?,
    attribute agent { text }?,
```

```

        ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.cert
Like )*
}

```

<gi>

<gi> (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.
[\[23. Documentation Elements 23.5. Element Specifications\]](#)

Module
Attributes

tagdocs

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*

scheme

supplies the name
of the scheme in
which this name is
defined.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Sample TEI
values this
include: elem
ent
is
part
of
the
TEI
sche
me.

*[Def
ault]*

DBK

(doc
book
) this
elem
ent
is
part
of
the
Docb
ook
sche
me.

XX

(unk
now
n)
this
elem
ent
is
part
of an
unkn
own
sche
me.

**Schemat
ron**

this
elem
ent
is
from
Sche
matr
on.

HTML

this
elem
ent
is
from
the

HTM
L
sche
me.

Member of Contained by

[model.phrase.xml](#)

analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

XSD Name

<p>The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi> element, as is the <gi scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element.</p>

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the *scheme* attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the <gi> in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted.

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.name"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gi
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { text }?,
  teidata.name
```

}

<gloss>

<gloss> (gloss) identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses 23.4.1. Description of Components]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cReferencing
 - @cRef
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.declaring
 - @decls
- att.pointing
 - @targetLang
 - @target
 - @evaluate
- att.translatable
 - @versionDate
- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype

Member of Contained by

model.emphLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item

May contain

l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc category
change classCode creation distributor
edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor taxonomy
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
The *target* and *cRef* attributes are
mutually exclusive.

Note

Example

We may define <term rend="sc" xml:id="tdpv">discursal point of view</term> as
<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between
the implied author or some other addressee,
and the fiction.</gloss>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gloss
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

        tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
        tei_att.cmc.attributes,
        tei_att.declaring.attributes,
        tei_att.pointing.attributes,
        tei_att.translatable.attributes,
        tei_att.typed.attributes,
        tei_macro.phraseSeq
    }
}

```

<graphic>

<**graphic**> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [[3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](#) [12.1. Digital Facsimiles](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.media
 - *@width*
 - *@height*
 - *@scale*
- att.resourced
 - *@url*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

Member of **Contained by**

model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author
biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
mentioned name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
soCalled speaker stage term time title
unclear
figures: cell figure formula table
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePage titlePart trailer
core: desc
The *mimeType* attribute should be
used to supply the MIME media type of
the image specified by the *url*
attribute.

Within the body of a text, a *<graphic>*
element indicates the presence of a
graphic component in the source itself.
Within the context of a *<facsimile>* or
<sourceDoc> element, however, a
<graphic> element provides an
additional digital representation of
some part of the source being
encoded.

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from th
e Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showi
ng four or five sailing boats in the fore
ground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between t
hem.</figDesc>
</figure>
<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page1.png"/>
    </surface>
```

Example

Example

```
<surface>
  <graphic url="page2-
highRes.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
</surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
</facsimile>
<surfaceGrp n="leaf1" xml:id="spi00
1">
  <surface xml:id="spi001r">
    <graphic subtype="thumbnail"
      type="normal" url="spi/thumb/
001r.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res" type="n
ormal"
      url="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
      type="normal" url="spi/normal/
highRes/001r.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res"
      type="high-contrast" url="spi/
contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
      type="high-contrast" url="spi/
contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
  </surface>
  <surface xml:id="spi001v">
    <graphic subtype="thumbnail"
      type="normal" url="spi/thumb/
001v.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res" type="n
ormal"
      url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
      type="normal" url="spi/normal/
highRes/001v.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res"
      type="high-contrast" url="spi/
contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
      type="high-contrast" url="spi/
contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
  <zone xml:id="spi001v_detail01">
    <graphic subtype="thumbnail"
      type="normal" url="spi/thumb/
001v-detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res"
```

```

        type="normal"
        url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v-
detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
        type="normal"
        url="spi/normal/highRes/001v-
detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="low-res"
        type="high-contrast"
        url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v-
detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic subtype="high-res"
        type="high-contrast"
        url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v-
detail01.jpg"/>
</zone>
</surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```

<content>
<classRef key="model.descLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
    ="0"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element graphic
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.media.attributes,
    tei_att.resourced.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_model.descLike*
}
```

<group>

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
- @xml:id

Contained by
May contain

Example

- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

textstructure: group text

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap head index lb milestone note
pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer

dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

group opener postscript salute signed

text trailer

```
<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts --
&gt;
&lt;front&gt;
<!-- biographical notice by editor --&gt;
&lt;/front&gt;
&lt;group&gt;
&lt;text&gt;
<!-- first poem --&gt;
&lt;/text&gt;
&lt;text&gt;
<!-- second poem --&gt;
&lt;/text&gt;
&lt;/group&gt;
&lt;/text&gt;</pre>
```

Content model

```
<!-- end of Pope section-->
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <alternate>
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="text"/>
        <elementRef key="group"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element group
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al )*,
    (
      ( tei_text | tei_group ),
      ( tei_text | tei_group | tei_model.g
lobal )*
    ),
    tei_model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

<head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a

section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [[4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.headLike model.pLike.front

core: divGen lg list listBibl

figures: figure table

textstructure: argument back body div
front group postscript

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign

gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg

list listBibl mentioned milestone name

note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic

soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

May contain

Note

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>` occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section.

Example

The most common use for the `<head>` element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>`, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of
    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
    <div2 type="section">
      <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
      <p>Proposing as I do ...
      <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve
        years passed.</p>
      <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six
        years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
    </div2>
  </div1>
```

Example

When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. [the heading "Secunda conclusio"](#)) they might however be encoded as if. The actual

placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
  <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
  <p>
    <lb n="1251"/>
    <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis <supplied>.</supplied>
    </hi>
    <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium
    [...]
  </p>
</div>
```

Example

The *<head>* element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally

useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument.

```
<list rend="bulleted">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item>
    <!-- ... -->
  </item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element head
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_lg
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_model.inter
        | tei_model.ILike
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}
```

<hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [[3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases](#) [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language](#)]

Module Attributes

- core
 - att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.cmc

Member of Contained by

- *@generatedBy*
- att.written
- *@hand*

model.hiLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence

principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture
further witnesseth</hi>

that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter
Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended
marriage ...

May contain

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hi
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<ident>

<ident> (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.

[[23.1.1. Phrase Level Terms](#)]

Module

Attributes

tagdocs

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

model.emphLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
Character data only
In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements <gi> and <att> are provided.

May contain

Note

Example

```
<ident type="ns">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ident { tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes, text }
```

<idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [14.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp

- *@next*
- *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
 - type
 - @subtype

type	categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.
Derived from	att.typed
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.e numerate d
Suggest	ISBN
ed	Inter
values	natio
include:	nal Stan dard Book Num ber: a 13- or (if assig ned prior to

2007
) 10-
 digit
 ident
 ifyin
 g
 num
 ber
 assig
 ned
 by
 the
 publi
 shin
 g
 indu
 stry
 to a
 publi
 shed
 book
 or
 simil
 ar
 item,
 regis
 tere
 d
 with
 the
Inter
natio
nal
ISB
N
Agen
cy.

ISSN

Inter
natio
nal
Stan
dard
Seri
al
Num
ber:
an

eight
-digit
num
ber
to
uniq
uely
ident
ify a
seria
l
publi
catio
n.

DOI

Digit
al
Obje
ct
Iden
tifier
: a
uniq
ue
strin
g of
lette
rs
and
num
bers
assig
ned
to an
elect
ronic
docu
ment

.

URI

Unif
orm
Reso
urce
Iden
tifier
: a

string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of [RFC 3986](#)

.
VIAF

A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for

the
same
entit
y.

ESTC

Engli
sh
Shor
t-

Title
Cata
logu
e

num
ber:

an
ident
ifyin
g

num
ber
assig
ned

to a
docu
ment

in
Engli
sh
print

ed in
the
Briti
sh
Isles

or
Nort
h
Ame

rica
befo
re
1801

OCLC

OCL
C

control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

Member of

model.nameLike

Contained by

model.publicationStmtPart.detail

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address

author bibl biblScope corr date del
desc editor emph expan foreign gloss
head hi item l label mentioned name
note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker
stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder idno language licence
principal publicationStmt seriesStmt
sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
header: idno
character data
<idno> should be used for labels
which identify an object or concept in
a formal cataloguing system such as a
database or an RDF store, or in a
distributed system such as the World
Wide Web. Some suggested values for
type on *<idno>* are *ISBN*, *ISSN*, *DOI*,
and *URI*.

May contain

Note

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-  
1</idno>  
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</  
idno>  
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</  
idno>  
<idno type="URI">http://  
www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</  
idno>  
<idno type="URI">http://  
authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>  
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.5  
37(17)</idno>  
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>  
<idno type="oldCat">  
<g ref="#sym"/>345  
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes
a non-Unicode character which is

defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<elementRef key="idno"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element idno
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type
    {
        "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "V
        IAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
    }?,
    ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_idno )*
}
```

<imprimatur>

<imprimatur> (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [\[4.6. Title Pages\]](#)

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`
 - `@xml:lang`
 - `@xml:space`
 - att.global.analytic
 - `@ana`
 - att.global.facs
 - `@facs`
 - att.global.linking
 - `@corresp`
 - `@next`
 - `@prev`

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

model.titlepagePart

textstructure: titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign

gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg

list listBibl mentioned milestone name

note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic

soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<imprimatur>Licensed and entered according to Order.</imprimatur>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element imprimatur { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro paraContent }
```

<index>

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

[[3.9.2. Index Entries](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking

- *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.spanning
 - *@spanTo*
- indexName** a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.
- Status** Optional
Datatype teidata.n
Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of Contained by

model.global.meta
 analysis: s w
 core: abbr add addrLine address
 author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
 editor emph expan foreign gloss head
 hi index item l label lg list mentioned
 name note num orig p pubPlace
 publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
 sp speaker stage term time title
 unclear

May contain

Example

figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
core: index term
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
`<index indexName="NAMES">
 <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index>` b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura `<index indexName="PLACES">
 <term>Sura</term>`
`</index>` was David's own first cousin.

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
            minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="term"/>
    <elementRef key="index" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element index
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { text }?,
  ( ( tei_term, tei_index? )*)
}
```

<interp>

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [[18.3. Spans and Interpretations](#)]

Module analysis

Attributes

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.interpLike
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
 - *@inst*

Member of Contained by

model.global.meta
analysis: interpGrp s w
core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label lg list mentioned name
note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker
stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

Note

core: desc
character data
Generally, each `<interp>` element carries an `xml:id` attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an `<interp>` with any textual element through its `ana` attribute.

Alternatively (or, in addition) an `<interp>` may carry an `inst` attribute that points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the `<interp>` applies.

Example

```
<interp type="structuralunit"  
       xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
            minOccurs="0">  
    <textNode/>  
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>  
    <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  
  </alternate>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interp  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,  
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
  tei_att.interpLike.attributes,  
  ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.de  
scLike | tei_model.certLike )*  
}
```

<interpGrp>

`<interpGrp>` (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [18.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module

Attributes

analysis

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.interpLike
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
 - *@inst*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.global.meta
 analysis: s w
 core: abbr add addrLine address
 author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
 editor emph expan foreign gloss head
 hi item l label lg list mentioned name
 note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
 ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker
 stage term time title unclear
 figures: cell figure table
 header: authority change classCode
 distributor edition extent funder
 language licence principal sponsor
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: argument back body
 byline closer dateline div docAuthor
 docDate docEdition docImprint
 docTitle epigraph front group
 imprimatur opener postscript salute
 signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
 analysis: interp
 core: desc
 Any number of <interp> elements.

May contain

Note

Example

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA"
  type="structuralunit">
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA">
<!-- bibliographic citation for source of this
interpretive framework --&gt;
&lt;/bibl&gt;</pre>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <elementRef key="interp"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interpGrp
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( tei_model.descLike*, tei_interp+ )
}
```

<item>

<item> (item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]

Module
Attributes

core
• att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*

core: list

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the *<item>* element is by definition synonymous with the use of the *<label>* element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary

Contained by May contain

Note

lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not *n*.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headi
  ngs of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Cl
  otild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar want
  ed to appropriate one third of the Chur
  ch revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and childre
  n of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bre
  tons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.
  </item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</
  item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element item
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

<keywords>

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`
 - `@xml:lang`
 - `@xml:space`
 - att.global.analytic
 - `@ana`
 - att.global.facs

- *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- scheme** identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonony> element, or by some other resource.
- Status** Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by

May contain

Note

header: textClass
 core: list term
 Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.

```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britai
n - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

Example

Example

```
<keywords>
<term>Fermented beverages</term>
<term>Central Andes</term>
<term>Schinus molle</term>
<term>Molle beer</term>
<term>Indigenous peoples</term>
<term>Ethnography</term>
<term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate>
<elementRef key="term"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
<elementRef key="list"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element keywords
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { text }?,
  ( tei_term+ | tei_list )
}
```

<|>

<|> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@cert</i> • <i>@resp</i> • att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@source</i> • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@generatedBy</i> • att.fragmentable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@part</i> <p>model.lLike core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear figures: cell figure header: change licence linking: seg textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear figures: figure formula table header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data <l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/ x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer' s day?</l> <sch:rule context="tei:l"> <sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.// tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements.</sch:report> </sch:rule></p>
Member of	
Contained by	
May contain	
Example	
Schematron	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/></pre>

```

<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element l
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_model.inter
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}

```

<label>

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
 - *@place*

Member of Contained by

- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

model.labelLike

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div

docEdition epigraph imprimatur

postscript salute signed titlePart

trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle E
nglish</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New Engl
ish</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
```

May contain

Example

```

<label>med</label>
<item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
<label>wude</label>
<item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
<label>awe</label>
<item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
<label>lhouth</label>
<item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
<label>sterteth</label>
<item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
</cit>
</item>
<label>verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

Example

Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element:

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred

in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. `<list rend="runon" type="ordered">`

`<label>(1)</label>`

`<item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>`

`<label>(2) </label>`

`<item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the`

`printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>`

Example

</list>

Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the `<label>` might also appear within the `<item>` rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example

Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the `<label>` element appears *within* the `<p>` or `<lg>` element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais &am p; mal-heu-
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confen te-
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft
<lb/> arrest , quoy que de faict il ne fo it
<label place="margin">Puissance mari tale
entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/> confomm . Depuis la confomma
```

```

<lb/>tion du mariage la femme est fou
bs
<lb/> la puissance du mary, s'il n'est ef
cla-
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en c
e
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a espousé vn e
n-
<lb/>fant de famille, est sous la puissanc
ce
[...]</p>

```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element label
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}

```

<langUsage>

<**langUsage**> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4.](#)
[The Profile Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

Example

Schematron

Content model

Schema Declaration

- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declarable
 - @default

model.profileDescPart

header: profileDesc

core: p

header: language

<langUsage>

<language ident="fr-CA" usage="60"

>Québecois</language>

<language ident="en-CA" usage="20"

>Canadian business English</

language>

<language ident="en-GB" usage="20"

>British English</language>

</langUsage>

<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">

<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:la

ngUsage"/> </sch:pattern>

<content>

<alternate>

<classRef key="model.pLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>

<elementRef key="language"

maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>

</alternate>

</content>

element langUsage

{

tei_att.global.attributes,

```

    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_language+ )
}

```

<language>

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]

Module Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.scope
 - @scope

ident

(identifier)

Supplies a language code constructed as defined in [BCP 47](#) which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which may be referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.language

usage

specifies the

Contained by **May contain**

Note

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration

approximate percentage of the text which uses this language.
Status Optional
Datatype [nonNegativeInteger](#)

header: langUsage
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
mentioned milestone name note num
pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

```
element language
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.scope.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  attribute usage { text }?,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<lb>

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a topographic line in some edition or version of a text. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.breaking
 - @break
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy
- att.edition
 - @ed
 - @edRef
- att.spanning
 - @spanTo
- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype

model.milestoneLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned
name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

May contain

Note

figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
Empty element
By convention, *<lb>* elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next *<lb>* element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking the beginning of each new topographic line on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where it occurs; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the *<l>* element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the beginning of the new topographic line is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example

This example shows the encoding of the beginning of each new topographic line within a metrical line, indicating where it occurs in both the 1667 and 1674 editions:

<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fr

```
uit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb
ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb e
d="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> o
ur woe,</l>
```

Example

This example shows the encoding of the beginning of a new topographical line as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the beginning of the new line does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
<lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="n
o"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<empty/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lb
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.breaking.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.edition.attributes,
    tei_att.spanning.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    empty
}
```

<lg>

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [[3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](#) [3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama](#) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*

- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.divLike
 - *@org*
 - *@sample*
- att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.divPart model.paraPart
 core: add corr del emph head hi item
 lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage
 title unclear

figures: cell figure

header: change licence

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div

docEdition epigraph imprimatur

postscript salute signed titlePart

trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: add corr del desc gap head index
 l label lb lg milestone note orig pb reg
 sic stage unclear

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer

dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

opener postscript salute signed trailer

contains verse lines or nested line

groups only, possibly prefixed by a
 heading.

May contain

Note

Example

```
<lg type="free">
<l>Let me be my own fool</l>
<l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
<l>is equivocal.</l>
<l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
<l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
<l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:lg">
<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="tei:lg">
<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
<classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
<classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
<classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
```

```

<classRef key="model.pPart.transcri
ptional"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element lg
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.divLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    (
        ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al )*,
        (
            tei_model.lLike
            | tei_model.stageLike
            | tei_model.labelLike
            | tei_model.pPart.transcriptional
            | tei_lg
        ),
        (
            tei_model.lLike
            | tei_model.stageLike
            | tei_model.labelLike
            | tei_model.pPart.transcriptional
            | tei_model.global
            | tei_lg
        )*
    ),
    ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global* )* )
)
}

```

<licence>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.datable
 - @period
 - att.datable.w3c
 - @when
- att.pointing
 - @targetLang
 - @target
 - @evaluate

model.availabilityPart

header: availability

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign

gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg

list listBibl mentioned milestone name

note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic

soCalled sp stage term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

Note

A `<licence>` element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The `target` attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The `when`, `notBefore`, `notAfter`, `from` or `to` attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

Example

```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence : Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence</licence><availability> <licence notBefore="2013-01-01" target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"> <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p> <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p> </licence> </availability>
```

Content model

```
<content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element licence { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.datable.attributes, tei_att.pointing.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<list>

`<list>` (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
 - type
 - *@subtype*

type	(type) describes the nature of the items in the list.
Derived from	att.typed
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.e
	numerated
Suggest gloss	
ed	(gloss)
values	s)
include:	each
	list
	item
	gloss
	es
	some
	term
	or
	concept,
	which

h is
give
n by
a
<lab
el>
elem
ent
prec
edin
g the
list
item.

index

(inde
x)
each
list
item
is an
entr
y in
an
inde
x
such
as
the
alph
abeta
cal
topic
al
inde
x at
the
back
of a
print
volu
me.

**instructi
ons**

(inst
ructi
ons)
each

list
item
is a
step
in a
sequ
ence
of
instr
uctio
ns,
as in
a
recip
e.

litany
(lita
ny)
each
list
item
is
one
of a
sequ
ence
of
petit
ions,
supp
licati
ons
or
invo
catio
ns,
typic
ally
in a
relig
ious
ritua
l.

**syllogis
m**
(syll
ogis

m)
each
list
item
is
part
of an
argu
ment
consi
sting
of
two
or
more
prop
ositi
ons
and
a
final
conc
lusio
n
deriv
ed
from
them

.

Note Previous versions of these Guideline s recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was

bulleted,
numbered, etc.).
The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows `<label>` tags to be omitted from lists tagged `<list type=" gloss">`; this is however a semantic error.

Member of Contained by

May contain

model.listLike
core: add corr del desc emph head hi
item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change keywords licence
revisionDesc sourceDesc
linking: seg
textstructure: argument back body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: desc gap head index item label lb
milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer
dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph
opener postscript salute signed trailer

Note

May contain an optional heading
followed by a series of items, or a
series of label and item pairs, the
latter being optionally preceded by one
or two specialized headings.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
    <list rend="bulleted">
      <item>rings on his fingers</item>
      <item>bells on his toes</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
<list rend="bulleted" type="syllogism">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
<list rend="simple" type="litany">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
```

Example

Example

Example

item>
<item>God save us from wickedness i
n high places.</item>
<item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924-939):

<div1 type="section">
<head>Athelstan's Ordinance</
head>
<list rend="numbered">
<item n="1">Concerning thieves. Fir
st, that no thief is to be spared who is c
aught with
the stolen goods, [if he is] over twel
ve years and [if the value of the goods i
s] over
eightpence.
<list rend="numbered">
<item n="1.1">And if anyone does s
pare one, he is to pay for the thief with
his
wergild — and the thief is to be n
o nearer a settlement on that account
— or to
clear himself by an oath of that a
mount.</item>
<item n="1.2">If, however, he [the t
hief] wishes to defend himself or to esc
ape, he is
not to be spared [whether younge
r or older than twelve].</item>
<item n="1.3">If a thief is put into
prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, an
d he may
then be redeemed with 120 shilli
ngs; and the kindred are to stand suret
y for him
that he will desist for ever.</
item>
<item n="1.4">And if he steals afte
r that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild,
or to bring him back there.</
item>

<item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,

whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who

supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>

</list>

</item>

<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom

no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a

person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.

<list rend="numbered">

<item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,

he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him

down as a thief.</item>

<item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild

or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>

</list>

</item>

<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds

his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and

120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as

often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had

refused him justice.

<list rend="numbered">

<item n="3.1">And the lord who is

an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes

known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first

occasional if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>

<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been

an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</item>

</list>

</item>

<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to

a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>

</list>

</div1>

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they

confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards

inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy

Cross.

<list rend="simple">

<item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have

subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy

Example

Schematron

Content model

```
Cross.</item>
<item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people
across the Humber, consenting have su
bscribed with
    the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the chur
ch of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribe
d with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
        <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the churc
h of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscrib
ed with the
            sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
            <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candid
a Casa, suppliant, have subscribed wit
h thef sign of
                the Holy Cross.</item>
                <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the chur
ch of Mayo, have subscribed with devo
ut will.</item>
                <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have su
bscribed through delegates.</item>
                <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subsc
ribed with serene mind with the sign of
the Holy
        Cross.</item>
    </list>
</p>
<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='glo
ss']">
    <sch:assert test="tei:label">The
content of a "gloss" list should include
a sequence of one or more pairs of a
label element followed by an item
element</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
```

```
<content>
    <sequence>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
            <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
            <classRef key="model.global"/>
            <elementRef key="desc"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
        </alternate>
        <alternate>
            <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
```

```

minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="item"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<elementRef key="headLabel"
minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="headItem"
minOccurs="0"/>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
" minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="label"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="item"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element list
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "li
tany" | "syllogism"
  }?,
  (

```

```

( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.glob
al | tei_desc*)*
(
  (( tei_item, tei_model.global*)+
  | (
    headLabel?,
    headItem?,
    (( tei_label, tei_model.global*, t
ei_item, tei_model.global*)+
    )
  ),
  (( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.
global*)*)
)
}

```

<listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.
[\[3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References\]](#)
[\[2.2.7. The Source Description\]](#) [\[16.3.2. Declarable Elements\]](#)

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declarable
 - *@default*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*

Member of Contained by

- att.typed
 - @type
 - @subtype

May contain

Example

model.biblLike model.frontPart
core: add cit corr del desc emph head
hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg
relatedItem sic stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc
taxonomy
linking: seg
textstructure: argument back body div
docEdition epigraph front imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer
core: bibl desc head lb listBibl
milestone pb
linking: anchor
<listBibl>
<head>Works consulted</head>
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: F
eminist Companion to
Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
<biblStruct>
<analytic>
<title>The Interesting story of the C
hildren in the Wood</title>
</analytic>
<monogr>
<title>The Penny Histories</title>
<author>Victor E Neuberg</
author>
<imprint>
<publisher>OUP</publisher>
<date>1968</date>
</imprint>
<monogr>
</biblStruct>
</listBibl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:lis
tBibl"/> </sch:pattern>

Schematron

Content model

```
<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.headLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
```

```

        ="0"/>
      <elementRef key="desc"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
        ="0"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike
        "
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="relation" maxOcc
        urs="1"
        minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation"
        maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.biblLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="1"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
          <classRef key="model.milestoneLik
          e"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
          <elementRef key="relation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
          <elementRef key="listRelation"
          maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
  </content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element listBibl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.headLike*,
    tei_desc*,
    ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation
    | listRelation )*,
    (

```

```

(
    tei_model.biblLike+,
    ( tei_model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*
)
)
}

```

<mentioned>

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*

Member of Contained by

model.emphLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope corr date del desc editor
 emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
 l label mentioned name note num orig
 p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
 sic soCalled speaker stage term time
 title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
 classCode creation distributor edition

May contain

extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Example

There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like <mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned> <gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second syllable of the word, and its participial derivative <mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned> <gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element mentioned
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<milestone>

<**milestone**> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.breaking
 - *@break*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.edition
 - *@ed*
 - *@edRef*
 - att.milestoneUnit
 - *@unit*
 - att.spanning
 - *@spanTo*
 - att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

Member of Contained by

model.milestoneLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address

author bibl biblScope cit corr date del

editor emph expan foreign gloss head

hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned

name note num orig p pubPlace

May contain

Note

publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
sp speaker stage term time title
unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
Empty element
For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone ed="La" n="23" unit="Dre  
issiger"/>  
... <milestone ed="AV" n="24" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model

```
<content>  
<empty/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element milestone  
{  
    tei_att.global.attributes,  
    tei_att.breaking.attributes,  
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
    tei_att.edition.attributes,  
    tei_att.milestoneUnit.attributes,  
    tei_att.spanning.attributes,  
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

} empty

<name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*
- att.personal
 - *@full*
 - *@sort*
- att.naming
 - *@role*
 - *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.typed
 - *@type*

Member of Contained by

- *@subtype*

model.nameLike.agent

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope corr date del
desc editor emph expan foreign gloss
head hi item l label mentioned name
note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled
speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Proper nouns referring to people,
places, and organizations may be
tagged instead with *<persName>*,
<placeName>, or *<orgName>*, when
the TEI module for names and dates is
included.

May contain

Note

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccle  
ve</name>  
<name type="place">Villingaholt</  
name>  
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Instit  
ut</name>  
<name ref="#HOC001" type="person"  
>Occleve</name>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element name
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.personal.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<note>

<**note**> (note) contains a note or annotation. [[3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](#) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](#) [3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](#) [10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.anchoring
 - @anchored
 - @targetEnd
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

**Member of
Contained by**

- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.pointing
 - *@targetLang*
 - *@target*
 - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

model.noteLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label lg list mentioned name
note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled
sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode
distributor edition extent funder
language licence notesStmt principal
sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled sp stage term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

May contain

Example

In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance
art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" resp=
"#MDMH"
type="gloss">
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</
term>. This word has, in the German, t
wo
distinct meanings, one objective, a qu
ality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of appreh
ension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguishe
d in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</
mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> r
espectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth
century that drapery has this
psychological significance.

```
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to En
  glish</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mac
  kie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code
MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for
example by means of a responsibility
statement in the associated TEI
header.

The global *n* attribute may be used to
supply the symbol or number used to
mark the note's point of attachment in
the source text, as in the following
example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matr
iarch of the
family during the second half of the el

Example

eventh century, <note anchored="true" n="126"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.anchoring.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.specialPara
}
```

<notesStmt>

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana

- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

Contained by
May contain
Note

header: fileDesc

core: note relatedItem

Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

Example

```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element notesStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  ( tei_model.noteLike | tei_relatedItem
)+
```

<num>

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module
Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id

- $\text{@}n$
- $\text{@}xml:lang$
- $\text{@}xml:space$
- att.global.analytic
 - $\text{@}ana$
- att.global.facs
 - $\text{@}facs$
- att.global.linking
 - $\text{@}corresp$
 - $\text{@}next$
 - $\text{@}prev$
- att.global.rendition
 - $\text{@}rend$
- att.global.responsibility
 - $\text{@}cert$
 - $\text{@}resp$
- att.global.source
 - $\text{@}source$
- att.cmc
 - $\text{@}generatedBy$
- att.ranging
 - $\text{@}atLeast$
 - $\text{@}atMost$
 - $\text{@}min$
 - $\text{@}max$
 - $\text{@}confidence$
- att.typed
 - type
 - $\text{@}subtype$

type indicates the type
of numeric value.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Suggest cardinal
ed abso

values lute

include: num
ber,
e.g.
21,
21.5

ordinal
ordi

nal
num
ber,
e.g.
21st

fraction
fract
ion,
e.g.
one
half
or
thre
e-
quar
ters

**percenta
ge**
a
perc
enta
ge

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined

	by the TEI datatype teidata.n umeric.
Member of Contained by	model.measureLike analysis: s core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear figures: cell figDesc header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor linking: seg tagdocs: eg textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code gi ident val character data
May contain	Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 19. Feature Structures . The <code><num></code> element is intended for use in simple applications.
Note	
Example	<pre><p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my <num type="ordinal" value="21"></pre>

```
twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E1
0">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
</num> cm per second.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.ranging.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal"
    | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
    attribute value { text }?,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<opener>

<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

Member of Contained by

- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

model.divTopPart

core: lg list

textstructure: body div group

postscript

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr

date del emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q

ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: argument byline

dateline epigraph salute signed

character data

<opener>

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August
1592</dateline>

</opener>

<opener>

<dateline>

<name type="place">Great Marlboro
ugh Street</name>

<date>November 11, 1848</date>

</dateline>

<salute>My dear Sir,</salute>

</opener>

<p>I am sorry to say that absence fro
m town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>

Example

Example

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<elementRef key="argument"/>
<elementRef key="byline"/>
<elementRef key="dateline"/>
```

```

<elementRef key="epigraph"/>
<elementRef key="salute"/>
<elementRef key="signed"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element opener
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_model.phrase
        | tei_argument
        | tei_byline
        | tei_dateline
        | tei_epigraph
        | tei_salute
        | tei_signed
        | tei_model.global
    )*
}

```

<orig>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization 13. Critical Apparatus]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@cert</i> • <i>@resp</i> • att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@source</i> • att.cmc <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@generatedBy</i>
Member of	model.choicePart
Contained by	<p>model.pPart.transcriptional analysis: pc s w core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear figures: cell header: change distributor edition extent licence linking: seg tagdocs: eg textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear figures: figure formula table header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val character data</p>
May contain	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <i><orig></i> may be used alone:</p> <p><l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l> <l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>v nderstoode</orig> </l></p> <p>More usually, an <i><orig></i> will be combined with a regularized form</p>
Example	
Example	

within a <choice> element:

```

<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice
>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>
```

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element orig
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp

- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.pLike

core: item note q sp stage

figures: cell figure

header: availability change editionStmt

editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage

licence projectDesc publicationStmt

refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt

sourceDesc

textstructure: argument back body div

epigraph front postscript

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign

gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg

list listBibl mentioned milestone name

note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic

soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There i

s blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>

>What have you

done?</q>

</p>

<p>

<q>I have now arranged that you can

be married a second time,</q> replied

Thjostolf.

</p>

<p>

<q>Then you must mean that Thorval

d is dead,</q> she said.

</p>

<p>

<q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And

May contain

Example

Schematron

```
now you must think up some plan for  
me.</q>  
</p>  
<sch:rule context="tei:p">  
<sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or  
ancestor::tei:p) and  
not( ancestor::tei:floatingText |  
parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item  
| parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q |  
parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks |  
parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp |  
parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell |  
parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model  
violation: Paragraphs may not occur  
inside other paragraphs or ab  
elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>  
<sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:p">  
<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure |  
parent::tei:note"> Abstract model  
violation: Metrical lines may not  
contain higher-level structural  
elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p  
is a child of figure or note, or is a  
descendant of floatingText.  
</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element p  
{  
    tei_att.global.attributes,  
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,  
    tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,  
    tei_att.written.attributes,  
    tei_macro.paraContent  
}
```

<pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.breaking
 - *@break*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.edition
 - *@ed*
 - *@edRef*
- att.spanning
 - *@spanTo*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

model.milestoneLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address
author bibl biblScope cit corr date del
editor emph expan foreign gloss head
hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned
name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled
sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode

distributor edition extent funder

language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

May contain

Note

textstructure: argument back body
byline closer dateline div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph front group
imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
Empty element

A `<pb>` element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the `<pb>` element itself.

The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the page beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes `break`, `ed`, or `edRef` should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page beginning is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example

Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb ed="ed2" n="145"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --&gt; ... &lt;pb ed="ed1" n="283"/&gt;
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--&gt; ... &lt;/p&gt;</pre>
```

Example

A page beginning may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the `facs` attribute

```
<body>
<pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;</pre>
```

the text it contains is encoded here -->

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 --&gt;
&lt;p&gt;</pre>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
</p>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<empty/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pb
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.breaking.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.edition.attributes,
    tei_att.spanning.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    empty
}
```

<pc>

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [18.1.2. Below the Word Level 18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module

analysis

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc
 - @generatedBy

- att.linguistic
 - *@lemma*
 - *@lemmaRef*
 - *@pos*
 - *@msd*
 - *@join*
 - att.lexicographic.normalized
 - *@norm*
 - *@orig*
- att.segLike
 - *@function*
 - att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*
 - att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

force

indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e

numerated

Legal values the punc tuati on mark is a word sepa rator

weak the punc tuati on mark

Member of Contained by

		is not a word sepa rator
inter	the punc tuati on mark may or may not be a word sepa rator	
unit	provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.	
	Status Optional	
	Datatype teidata.e numerate d	
pre	indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.	
	Status Optional	
	Datatype teidata.tr uthValue	
	model.segLike	
	analysis: s w	
	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear	
	figures: cell	
	header: change distributor edition	
	extent licence	

May contain

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
core: abbr add choice corr del expan
orig reg sic unclear
character data

Example

```
<phr>
<w>do</w>
<w>you</w>
<w>understand</w>
<pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Example

Example encoding of the German sentence *Wir fahren in den Urlaub.*, encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILALW.

```
<s>
<w msd="1.Pl.*.Nom" pos="PPER">
Wir</w>
<w msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind" pos="VVFIN">
fahren</w>
<w msd="--" pos="APPR">in</w>
<w msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg." pos="AR
T">den</w>
<w msd="Masc.Akk.Sg." pos="NN">
Urlaub</w>
<pc join="left" msd="--" pos="$.">.</
pc>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<elementRef key="c"/>
<classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

tei_att.cmc.attributes,
tei_att.linguistic.attributes,
tei_att.segLike.attributes,
tei_att.typed.attributes,
attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "
inter" }?,
attribute unit { text }?,
attribute pre { text }?,
( text | tei_model.gLike | c | tei_model
.pPart.edit )*
}

```

<postscript>

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divBottomPart

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front

group postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit desc gap head index l
label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p
pb q sp stage
figures: figure table
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: closer opener postscript
signed trailer

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</
      placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 0
      6</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assis
  tance splitting those
  logs. I'm sorry about the misundersta
  nding as to the size of
  the task. I really was not asking for h
  elp, only to borrow the
  axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</
  p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occurred on <date
    when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</
    date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
```

```

minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.common"/>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element postscript
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.placement.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divTo
pPart )*,
        tei_model.common,
        ( tei_model.global | tei_model.com
mon )*,
        ( ( tei_model.divBottomPart, tei_mo
del.global* )* )
    )
}

```

<principal>

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](#)]

Module Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs

- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*

**Member of
Contained by**

May contain

model.respLike
 core: bibl
 header: editionStmt titleStmt
 analysis: interp interpGrp
 core: abbr address choice date emph
 expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
 mentioned milestone name note num
 pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
 figures: figure
 header: idno
 linking: anchor
 tagdocs: att code gi ident val
 character data
<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/
 105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li
  mited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element principal
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.datable.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source

Member of
Contained by
May contain
Note

model.teiHeaderPart

header: teiHeader

header: creation langUsage textClass
Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</
    language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
```

```

<factuality type="fiction"/>
<interaction type="none"/>
<preparedness type="prepared"/>
<purpose degree="high" type="enter-
tain"/>
<purpose degree="medium" type="in-
form"/>
</textDesc>
<settingDesc>
<setting>
<name>Paris, France</name>
<time>Late 19th century</time>
</setting>
</settingDesc>
</profileDesc>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<classRef key="model.profileDescPart
"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="0"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element profileDesc { tei_att.global.att-
ributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* }

```

<projectDesc>

<**projectDesc**> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

[[2.3.1. The Project Description](#) [2.3. The Encoding Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*

Member of
Contained by
May contain
Example

Schematron

Content model

Schema Declaration

<ptr>

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#) [17.1. Links](#)]

Module
Attributes

- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.declarable
 - *@default*

model.encodingDescPart
header: encodingDesc
core: p
<projectDesc>
 <p>Texts collected for use in the Clar
 emont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990<
 /p>
</projectDesc>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
 <sch:param name="tde"
 value="tei:projectDesc"/>
</sch:pattern>

<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike"
 maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
 ="1"/>
</content>

element projectDesc
{
 tei_att.global.attributes,
 tei_att.declarable.attributes,
 tei_model.pLike+
}

- core
- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*

- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cReferencing
 - *@cRef*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.pointing
 - *@targetLang*
 - *@target*
 - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.ptrLike
 analysis: s
 core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope cit corr date del desc editor
 emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
 l label mentioned name note num orig
 p pubPlace publisher q ref reg
 relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled
 speaker stage term time title unclear
 figures: cell figDesc
 header: authority catDesc change
 classCode creation distributor edition
 extent funder language licence
 principal publicationStmt sponsor
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer
 Empty element

May contain

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:ptr">
  <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <empty/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ptr
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  empty
}
```

<pubPlace>

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@rend</i> • att.global.responsibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@cert</i> • <i>@resp</i> • att.global.source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@source</i> • att.naming <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@role</i> • <i>@nymRef</i> • att.canonical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@key</i> • <i>@ref</i>
Member of	model.imprintPart
Contained by	model.publicationStmtPart.detail core: bibl header: publicationStmt textstructure: docImprint
May contain	analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: anchor seg tagdocs: att code gi ident val character data <publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date> </publicationStmt>
Example	
Content model	<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element pubPlace { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.naming.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

<publicationStmt>

<**publicationStmt**> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4.]

[Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#) [2.2. The File Description](#)

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

header: fileDesc

core: address date p ptr pubPlace

publisher ref

header: authority availability
distributor idno

Contained by May contain

Note

Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </
  publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</
  pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</
  publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
  <date>2017</date>
  <availability>
    <p>This is an open access work licen-
    sed under a Creative Commons Attribu-
    tion 4.0 International license.</p>
  </availability>
  <ptr target="http://
  digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
      mtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationSt
      mtPart.detail"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

element publicationStmt

```
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    (
        (
            (
                tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
                agency,
                tei_model.publicationStmtPart.
                detail*
                )+
            )
        | tei_model.pLike+
    )
}
```

<publisher>

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](#) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

Module
Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*

Member of
Contained by

model.imprintPart
model.publicationStmtPart.agency
core: bibl

May contain

header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</
  publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publisher
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<q>

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
 - *@toWhom*
 - att.ascribed
 - *@who*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*

type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
 numerate
 d

Suggest **spoken**
ed (spo
values ken)
include: repr
 esen
 tatio
 n of
 spee
 ch
thought
 (tho
 ught
)

repr
esen
tatio
n of
thou
ght,
e.g.
inter
nal
mon
olog
ue

written

(writ
ten)
quot
ation
from
a
writt
en
sour
ce

soCalled

(so
calle
d)
auth
orial
dista
nce

foreign

(fore
ign)
forei
gn
word
s

distinct

(disti
nct)
lingu
istic
ally
disti
nct

term

**Member of
Contained by**

tech
nical
term
emph
(emp
h)
rhet
orica
lly
emp
hasiz
ed
**mention
ed**
(men
tione
d)
refer
ing
to
itself
, not
its
nor
mal
refer
ent

model.common model.hiLike
analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope cit corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled sp speaker stage term
time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure formula
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument body byline
closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint epigraph
imprimatur opener postscript salute

May contain

signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled sp stage term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note

May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, `<q>` may be thought of as syntactic sugar for `<hi>` with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

It is spelled `<q>Tübingen</q>` — to enter the letter `<q>u</q>` with an umlaut hold down the `<q>option</q>` key and press `<q>0 0 f c</q>`

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element q
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
```

```

| "distinct"
| "term"
| "emph"
| "mentioned"
}?,
tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

<ref>

<**ref**> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. [Links](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cReferencing
 - *@cRef*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.declaring
 - *@decls*
 - att.pointing
 - *@targetLang*
 - *@target*
 - *@evaluate*
 - att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

model.ptrLike

Member of

Contained by

analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope cit corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg
relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled
speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal publicationStmt sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note

The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>

Example

See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:ref">
  <sch:report test="@target and
  @cRef">Only one of the attributes
  @target and @cRef may be supplied on
  <sch:name/>. </sch:report>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element ref
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

<refsDecl>

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module

header

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declarable
 - @default

Member of Contained by May contain

model.encodingDescPart
header: encodingDesc
core: p

Example

```
<refsDecl>
<cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-
z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
replacementPattern="#xpath(//
body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl>
<p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
<att>n</att> attribute on the highest
level <gi>div</gi>
element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
number of the next level <gi>div</
gi> followed by a colon
followed by the sequential number of
the next (and lowest)
level <gi>div</gi>. </p>
</refsDecl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:ref
sDecl"/> </sch:pattern>
```

Schematron

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
<elementRef key="citeStructure"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
<elementRef key="cRefPattern"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
<elementRef key="refState"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```

tei_att.declarable.attributes,
( tei_model.pLike+ | citeStructure+ |
cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}

```

<reg>

<**reg**> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [[3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization 13. Critical Apparatus](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*
 - att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

Member of

Contained by

model.choicePart

model.pPart.transcriptional

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label lg mentioned name note num
orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time

May contain

title unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Example

If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, `<reg>` may be used alone:
`<q>Please <reg>knock</reg>` if an `<reg>answer</reg>` is `<reg>required</reg>`
`</q>`

Example

It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the `<choice>` and `<orig>` elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
```

```

<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element reg
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

<relatedItem>

<**relatedItem**> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.12.2.7. Related Items]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

target

points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or

**Member of
Contained by**

**May contain
Note**

Example

relative URI
reference.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.p
ointer

model.biblPart

core: bibl

header: notesStmt

core: bibl listBibl ptr ref

If the *target* attribute is used to
reference the related bibliographic
item, the element must be empty.

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of
      Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</
        publisher>
        <date>1953</date>
      </imprint>
      <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 c
        m.</extent>
    </monogr>
    <series>
      <title>Three centuries of drama: Eng
        lish, 1642-1700</title>
    </series>
    <relatedItem type="otherForm">
      <biblStruct>
        <monogr>
          <author>Shirley, James</author>
          <title type="main">The gentlemen
            of Venice</title>
          <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie p
            resented at the private house in Salisb
            ury
              Court by Her Majesties servants
            </title>
          <imprint>
            <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
            <publisher>H. Moseley</
              publisher>
              <date>1655</date>
            </imprint>
```

Schematron

```
<extent>78 p.</extent>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
</relatedItem>
</biblStruct>
<sch:rule context="tei:relatedItem">
<sch:report test="@target and
count( child::* ) > 0">If the @target
attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the
relatedItem element must be
empty</sch:report>
<sch:assert test="@target or
child::*">A relatedItem element should
have either a @target attribute or a
child element to indicate the related
bibliographic item</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
<classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    attribute target { text }?,
    ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.ptrLi
ke )?
}
```

<resp>

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic

- *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*

Contained by May contain

core: respStmt

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: abbr address choice date emph
expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
mentioned milestone name note num
pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at

<http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

Note

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/
  vocabulary/relators/
  com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
```

```
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element resp
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

<respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](#) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](#) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](#)]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.canonical
 - @key

**Member of
Contained by**

- *@ref*
- model.respLike
core: bibl
header: editionStmt seriesStmt
titleStmt
core: name note resp
<respStmt>
 <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
 <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
 <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
 <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="resp"
          maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="note"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element respStmt
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    (
        (
            ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.
agent+ )
            | ( tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei
            _resp+ )
            ),
            tei_note*
        )
    }
}

```

<revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module

header

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.docStatus
 - @status

Contained by May contain

header: teiHeader

core: list

header: change

Note

If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same

attribute may appear on any `<change>` to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally `<change>` elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="list"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listChange"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="change"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( tei_list+ | listChange+ | tei_change+
  )
}
```

<row>

`<row>` (row) contains one row of a table. [[15.1.1. TEI Tables](#)]

Module

Attributes

figures

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`
 - `@xml:lang`
 - `@xml:space`
 - att.global.analytic
 - `@ana`
 - att.global.facs
 - `@facs`
 - att.global.linking

Contained by
May contain
Example

- *@corresp*
- *@next*
- *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
 - *@role*
 - *@rows*
 - *@cols*

figures: table

figures: cell

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="cell"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element row
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  tei_cell+
}
```

<rs>

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [[14.2.1. Personal Names](#) [3.6.1. Referring Strings](#)]

Module
Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*

- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.naming
 - *@role*
 - *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

model.nameLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address
 author bibl biblScope corr date del
 desc editor emph expan foreign gloss
 head hi item l label mentioned name
 note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
 ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker
 stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
 classCode creation distributor edition
 extent funder language licence

principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr
 date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
 graphic hi index lb mentioned

Member of Contained by

May contain

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. B
ennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="pers
on">his lady</rs>

to him one day,

<q>have you heard that <rs type="pla
ce">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rs
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.naming.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<s>

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module

analysis

Attributes

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev

- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.notated
 - *@notation*
- att.segLike
 - *@function*
 - att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*
 - att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

Member of Contained by

model.segLike
 analysis: s
 core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope corr date del editor emph
 expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
 mentioned name note num orig p
 pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled speaker stage term time title
 unclear
 figures: cell
 header: change distributor edition
 extent licence
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer
 analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
 core: abbr add address choice cit corr
 date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
 graphic hi index lb mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
 ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
 unclear
 figures: figure formula

May contain

header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data

Note

The `<s>` element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the `<seg>` should be used instead.

The `type` attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

Example

```
<head>
<s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
<sch:rule context="tei:s">
<sch:report test="tei:s">You may not
nest one s element within another: use
seg instead</sch:report> </sch:rule>
```

Schematron

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element s
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.notated.attributes,
    tei_att.segLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<salute>

`<salute>` (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divWrapper
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: body closer div front
group opener

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<salute>To all courteous mindes, that
will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>

Example

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element salute
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<samplingDecl>

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in selecting texts, or parts of a text, for inclusion in the resource. [[2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration](#) [2.3. The Encoding Description](#) [16.3.2. Declarable Elements](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declarable
 - @default

Member of Contained by May contain Note

model.encodingDescPart

header: encodingDesc

core: p

This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too

difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
  <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:samplingDecl"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

Schematron

Content model

```
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element samplingDecl
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<seg>

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module Attributes

linking

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition

- *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.notated
 - *@notation*
- att.segLike
 - *@function*
 - att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*
 - att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.choicePart model.segLike
analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
soCalled speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition
extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear

May contain

figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note

The `<seg>` element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a `<ptr>` or other similar element.

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
```

Example

```
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-
  cap">So father's only</seg> glory was
  the ballfield.
</s>
<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patrony
  m">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a ki
  ng in Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his so
  ns ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a
  brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seg
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.notated.attributes,
  tei_att.segLike.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

```
    tei_att.written.attributes,  
    tei_macro.paraContent  
}
```

<seriesStmt>

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.declarable
 - @default

header: fileDesc

core: biblScope editor p respStmt title

header: idno

<seriesStmt>

```
<title>Machine-Readable Texts for th  
e Study of Indian Literature</title>  
<respStmt>  
  <resp>ed. by</resp>  
  <name>Jan Gonda</name>  
</respStmt>  
<biblScope unit="volume">1.2</  
biblScope>  
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</  
idno>  
</seriesStmt>  
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
```

Contained by

May contain

Example

Schematron

```

<sch:param name="tde"
value="tei:seriesStmt"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="title"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="editor"/>
        <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="idno"/>
        <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element seriesStmt
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    tei_model.pLike+
    | (
      tei_title+,
      ( tei_editor | tei_respStmt )*,
      ( tei_idno | tei_biblScope )*
    )
  )
}
```

<sic>

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module

core

Attributes

- att.global

- *@xml:id*
- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*

Member of

Contained by

May contain

model.choicePart
 model.pPart.transcriptional
 analysis: pc s w
 core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope choice corr date del editor
 emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
 l label lg mentioned name note num
 orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs
 sic soCalled speaker stage term time
 title unclear
 figures: cell
 header: change distributor edition
 extent licence
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer
 analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
 core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
 corr date del desc emph expan foreign
 gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
 list listBibl mentioned milestone name
 note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled stage term time title unclear
 figures: figure formula table

Example

header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.

Example

If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example

It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <choice>
<sic>we can</sic>
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
<sic>a Table</sic>
<corr>a' babblid</corr>
</choice> of green fields.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sic
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<signed>

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module Attributes

- textstructure
 - att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
 - att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart
core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div

front group opener postscript

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign

gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg

list listBibl mentioned milestone name

note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic

soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

character data

<signed>Thine to command <name>

Humph. Moseley</name>

</signed>

<closer>

<signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,

May contain

Example

```

<list>
  <item>John Bull,</item>
  <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
</list>
</signed>
</closer>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element signed
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

<soCalled>

<soCalled> (so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.cmc

Member of Contained by

- *@generatedBy*

model.emphLike
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice cit corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all
human sympathy to keep its distance,
was what the
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</
soCalled> to Scrooge.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element soCalled
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,  
    tei_macro.phraseSeq  
}
```

<sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as 'born digital' for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
- att.global.source
 - @source
- att.declarable
 - @default

header: fileDesc

core: bibl list listBibl p

figures: table

<sourceDesc>

<bibl>

<title level="a">The Interesting stor
y of the Children in the Wood</title>. I
n

<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>,
<title>The Penny Histories</title>.

<publisher>OUP</publisher>
<date>1968</date>. </bibl>

</sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc>

<p>Born digital: no previous source e

Contained by May contain

Example

Example

Schematron

```
xists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
<sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde"
value="tei:sourceDesc"/>
</sch:pattern>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
="1"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
<classRef key="model.sourceDescPa
rt"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.pLike+
        | ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.sou
rceDescPart | tei_model.listLike )+
    )
}
```

<sp>

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
- @xml:id
- @n
- @xml:lang
- @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs

- *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
 - *@toWhom*
 - att.ascribed
 - *@who*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divPart
core: item note q stage
figures: cell figure
header: change licence

textstructure: argument body div
epigraph postscript
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: cit gap index l lb lg list milestone
note p pb q speaker stage
figures: figure table
linking: anchor

May contain

The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the *<speaker>* element or as an alternative.

Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>

```

```

<speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
<p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...]</p>
<p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>
```

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.stageLike"
maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="speaker"
maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="lg"/>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
<classRef key="model.attributable"/>
<elementRef key="q"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
```

```

>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccu
rs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccu
rs="1">
  <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccu
rs="1">
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"
/>
    <elementRef key="q"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
s="0"/>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
  <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccu
rs="1">
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"
/>
    <elementRef key="q"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element sp
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,

```

```
tei_att.ascribed.directed.attributes,  
tei_att.placement.attributes,  
tei_att.written.attributes,  
(  
    tei_model.global*,  
    ((tei_model.stageLike, tei_model.g  
lobal*)*),  
    (  
        (  
            (tei_speaker, tei_model.global*)  
,  
            (  
                (  
                    (  
                        tei_lg  
                        | tei_model.llike  
                        | tei_model.plike  
                        | tei_model.listlike  
                        | tei_model.attributable  
                        | tei_q  
                        | tei_model.stageLike  
                    ),  
                    tei_model.global*  
                )  
            )  
        )  
    )  
),  
(  
    (  
        (  
            tei_lg  
            | tei_model.llike  
            | tei_model.plike  
            | tei_model.listlike  
            | tei_model.attributable  
            | tei_q  
        ),  
        tei_model.global*  
    )  
,  
(  
    (  
        (  
            tei_lg  
            | tei_model.llike  
            | tei_model.plike  
            | tei_model.listlike  
            | tei_model.attributable  
            | tei_q  
            | tei_model.stageLike  
        ),  
        tei_model.global*  
    )  
,
```

```

        )*
    )
}
}
```

<speaker>

<**speaker**> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [[3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama](#)]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
 - att.placement
 - *@place*
 - att.written
 - *@hand*

Contained by May contain

core: sp

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned

milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

character data

Note

This element may be used to transcribe which character is speaking in a dramatic text as indicated by the source text; the *who* attribute of an `<sp>` element may be used to point to another element (typically a `<role>`) which provides information about the character speaking. Either or both may be used.

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</
  speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking si
  multaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element speaker
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.placement.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<sponsor>

`<sponsor>` (sponsor) specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module

header

Attributes

- att.global
 - `@xml:id`
 - `@n`
 - `@xml:lang`
 - `@xml:space`
 - att.global.analytic
 - `@ana`
 - att.global.facs
 - `@facs`

- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*

**Member of
Contained by**

May contain

model.respLike
 core: bibl
 header: editionStmt titleStmt
 analysis: interp interpGrp
 core: abbr address choice date emph
 expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb
 mentioned milestone name note num
 pb ptr q ref rs soCalled term time title
 figures: figure
 header: idno
 linking: anchor
 tagdocs: att code gi ident val
 character data
 Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders* (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

Note

Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.li">
```

```
mited"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sponsor  
{  
    tei_att.global.attributes,  
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,  
    tei_att.datable.attributes,  
    tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited  
}
```

<stage>

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module Attributes

```
core  
• att.global  
• @xml:id  
• @n  
• @xml:lang  
• @xml:space  
• att.global.analytic  
• @ana  
• att.global.facs  
• @facs  
• att.global.linking  
• @corresp  
• @next  
• @prev  
• att.global.rendition  
• @rend  
• att.global.responsibility  
• @cert  
• @resp  
• att.global.source  
• @source  
• att.ascribed.directed  
• @toWhom  
• att.ascribed  
• @who  
• att.cmc  
• @generatedBy  
• att.placement  
• @place  
• att.written  
• @hand
```

type	indicates the kind of stage direction.
Status	Recommended
Datatype	0-∞
	occurrences of teidata enumerated separate d by whitespace
Suggest setting	
ed	desc
values	ribes
include:	a setting.
entrance	
	describes an entrance
exit	.
	describes an exit.
business	
	describes stage business.
novelisti	
c	is a narrative motivation

g
stag
e
direc
tion.

delivery
desc
ribes
how
a
char
acter
spea
ks.

modifier
gives
some
detai
l
abou
t a
char
acter

.

location
desc
ribes
a
locat
ion.

mixed
more
than
one
of
the
abov
e

Note If the
value
mixed is
used, it
must be
the only
value.
Multiple
values

may
however
be
supplied
if a single
stage
direction
performs
multiple
functions,
for
example
is both an
entrance
and a
modifier.

Member of Contained by

model.stageLike
core: add corr del desc emph head hi
item l lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp
stage title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled sp stage term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

May contain

<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>

```

<stage type="entrance">Enter Husba  
nd as being thrown off his horse and fa  
lls.</stage>  
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->  
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a  
bear.</stage>  
<stage type="business">He quickly ta  
kes the stone out.</stage>  
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.  
</stage>  
<stage type="novelistic">Having had  
enough, and embarrassed for the famil  
y.</stage>  
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in t  
he sun -->  
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as  
Ansaldo.</stage>  
<stage type="entrance modifier">Ent  
er Latrocinio disguised as an empiric</  
stage>  
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->  
<stage type="location">At a window.<  
/stage>  
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">  
Aside.</stage>  
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="marg  
in">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the <  
hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when  
straight appear'd a Heauen, and all t  
he <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on  
two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/  
ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who s  
ate thus till the rest of the  
<hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, whic  
h being ended, they descended in  
order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> w  
hiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our  
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>

```

Example

Content model

```

<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>  
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element stage  
{  
  tei_att.global.attributes,

```

```

tei_att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
tei_att.cmc.attributes,
tei_att.placement.attributes,
tei_att.written.attributes,
attribute type
{
    list
    {
        (
            "setting"
            | "entrance"
            | "exit"
            | "business"
            | "novelistic"
            | "delivery"
            | "modifier"
            | "location"
            | "mixed"
        )*
    }
},
}?,
tei_macro.specialPara
}

```

<table>

<table> (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.
[\[15.1.1. TEI Tables\]](#)

Module
Attributes

- figures**
- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source

- *@source*
- att.cmc
- *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

rows

(rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.c

ount

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

cols

(columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.c

ount

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of

Member of **Contained by**

May contain

Note

Example

columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

model.listLike
core: add corr del desc emph head hi
item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc
linking: seg
textstructure: argument back body div
docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart
trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap graphic head index lb
milestone note pb
figures: figure formula row
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer
dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph
postscript salute signed trailer
Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

```
<table cols="4" rows="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's
```

```

</cell>
<cell role="data">5</cell>
<cell role="data">8</cell>
<cell role="data">128</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
<cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
<cell role="data">3</cell>
<cell role="data">6</cell>
<cell role="data">36</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
<cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
<cell role="data">3</cell>
<cell role="data">5</cell>
<cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
<cell role="label">Wymondham</
cell>
<cell role="data">1</cell>
<cell role="data">11</cell>
<cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.headLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="row"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>

```

```

</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element table
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    attribute rows { text }?,
    attribute cols { text }?,
    (
        ( tei_model.headLike | tei_model.global )?,
        (
            ( ( tei_row, tei_model.global* )+
            | ( ( tei_model.graphicLike, tei_model.global* )+
            ),
            ( ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
            )
        )
    }
}

```

<taxonomy>

<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module Attributes

header

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*

Contained by **May contain**

Note

Example

- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*

header: classDecl taxonomy

core: bibl desc gloss listBibl

header: category taxonomy

Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
  <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
  <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</
catDesc>
</category>
</category>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="literature">
  <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
<category xml:id="poetry">
  <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
<category xml:id="sonnet">
  <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
<category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
  <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet<
/catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="petraSonnet">
  <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</
catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="haiku">
  <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="drama">
  <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="meter">
  <catDesc>Metrical Categories</
catDesc>
<category xml:id="feet">
  <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
<category xml:id="iambic">
  <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="trochaic">
  <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="feetNumber">
  <catDesc>Number of feet</
catDesc>
```

```

<category xml:id="pentameter">
  <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tetrameter">
  <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
<!-- elsewhere in document --&gt;
&lt;lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter"&gt;
  &lt;l&gt;Shall I compare thee to a summer's day&lt;/l&gt;
  &lt;!-- ... --&gt;
&lt;/lg&gt;
</pre>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate>
<alternate>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.descLike" maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="equiv" maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="gloss" maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="category"/>
      <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence>
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>

```

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<elementRef key="category"/>
<elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element taxonomy
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.datcat.attributes,
    (
        (
            ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )+
            | (
                ( tei_model.descLike | equiv | tei_gloss )+,
                ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )*
            )
        )
        | ( tei_model.biblLike, ( tei_category
        | tei_taxonomy )* )
    )
}

```

<teiCorpus>

<teiCorpus> (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev

- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

version

(version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.version

Note Major

editions

of the

Guideline

s have

long been

informall

y

referred

to by a

name

made up

of the

letter P

(for

Proposal)

followed

by a

digit. The

current

release is

one of

the many

releases

of the

fifth

major

edition of

the

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

Note

Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schema Spec>`.

model.describedResource
core: teiCorpus
core: teiCorpus
header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI text
Should contain one `<teiHeader>` for the corpus, and a series of `<TEI>` elements, one for each text.

As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except `<egXML>`) this element is in the TEI namespace (see [5.7.2. Namespaces](#)). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0> as the value

of the XML namespace declaration (`xmlns`), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document.

For example: `<teiCorpus version="4.8.1" xml:lang="en" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">`.

Example

```
<teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for second text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <classRef key="model.resource"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <classRef key="model.describedResource"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiCorpus
{
```

```

tei_att.global.attributes,
tei_att.typed.attributes,
attribute version { text }?,
( tei_teiHeader, tei_model.resource*,
tei_model.describedResource+ )
}

```

<teiHeader>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](#) [16.1. Varieties of Composite Text](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

header: encodingDesc fileDesc

profileDesc revisionDesc

One of the few elements

unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Contained by

May contain

Note

Example

```

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1
623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (156
4-1616)</author>
      <respStmt>

```

<resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
<name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
<resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
<name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<address>
<addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
</address>
<idno type="OTA">119</idno>
<availability>
<p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
</availability>
<date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
<p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
</projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
<correction>
<p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
</correction>

```

<normalization>
  <p>Original spelling and typograph
y is retained, except that long s and lig
atured
    forms are not encoded.</p>
</normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="(S+) ([
^ .]+)\.(.*)">
    replacementPattern="#xpath("//
div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']//
lb[@n='$3'])"
  <p>A reference is created by assem
bling the following, in the reverse orde
r as that
    listed here: <list>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of t
he preceding <gi>lb</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a period</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of t
he ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
      </item>
      <item>a space</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of t
he parent <gi>div1</gi>
      </item>
      </list>
    </p>
  </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr
89</date> Last checked by CAC</
item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 8
9</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>

```

```

<elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
<classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
           maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="revisionDesc"
           minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element teiHeader
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, tei_revisionDesc? )
}

```

<term>

<term> (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module

Attributes

- core
 - att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
 - att.cReferencing
 - @cRef
 - att.canonical
 - @key
 - @ref

- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.pointing
 - *@targetLang*
 - *@target*
 - *@evaluate*
- att.sortable
 - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

Member of Contained by

model.emphLike
 analysis: s
 core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope corr date del desc editor
 emph expan foreign gloss head hi
 index item l label mentioned name
 note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
 ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker
 stage term time title unclear
 figures: cell figDesc
 header: authority catDesc change
 classCode creation distributor edition
 extent funder keywords language
 licence principal sponsor
 linking: seg
 tagdocs: eg
 textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
 core: abbr add address choice cit corr
 date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
 graphic hi index lb mentioned
 milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
 ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
 unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val
 character data

When this element appears within an
<index> element, it is understood to
 supply the form under which an index

Note

entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a `<gloss>` element by means of its `ref` attribute; alternatively a `<gloss>` element may point to a `<term>` element by means of its `target` attribute.

In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

Example

A computational device that infers structure

from grammatical strings of words is known as a `<term>parser</term>`, and much of the history

of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

We may define `<term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</term>` as

`<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed`

Example

through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addressee, and the fiction.</gloss>

Example

We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discursal point of view</term> as

<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addressee, and the fiction.</gloss>

Example

We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discursal point of view</term> below.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element term
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
  tei_att.canonical.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.declaring.attributes,
  tei_att.pointing.attributes,
  tei_att.sortable.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_macro.phraseSeq
}
```

<text>

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module Attributes

```
textstructure
  • att.global
    • @xml:id
    • @n
    • @xml:lang
    • @xml:space
    • att.global.analytic
```

- *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.declaring
 - *@decls*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

**Member of
Contained by**

May contain

Note

Example

model.resource
 core: teiCorpus
 textstructure: TEI group
 analysis: interp interpGrp
 core: gap index lb milestone note pb
 figures: figure
 linking: anchor
 textstructure: back body front group
 This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

```
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
```

```
</body>
</text>
```

Example

The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
  <front>
    <!-- front matter for the whole group --
  >
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <!-- first text -->
      </text>
      <text>
        <!-- second text -->
        </text>
      </group>
    </text>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="body"/>
      <elementRef key="group"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs
      ="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0">
      <elementRef key="back"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccur
        s="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element text
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.global*,
        ( ( tei_front, tei_model.global* )? ),
        ( tei_body | tei_group ),
        tei_model.global*,
        ( ( tei_back, tei_model.global* )? )
    )
}

```

<textClass>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.declarable
 - *@default*

Member of Contained by May contain Example

model.profileDescPart

header: profileDesc

header: catRef classCode keywords

<taxonomy>

<category xml:id="acprose">

```

<catDesc>Academic prose</
catDesc>
</category>
<!-- other categories here --&gt;
&lt;/taxonomy&gt;
&lt!-- ... --&gt;
&lt;textClass&gt;
&lt;catRef target="#acprose"/&gt;
&lt;classCode scheme="http://
www.udcc.org"&gt;001.9&lt;/classCode&gt;
&lt;keywords scheme="http://
authorities.loc.gov"&gt;
&lt;list&gt;
&lt;item&gt;End of the world&lt;/item&gt;
&lt;item&gt;History - philosophy&lt;/item&gt;
&lt;/list&gt;
&lt;/keywords&gt;
&lt;/textClass&gt;
&lt;sch:pattern is-a="declarable"&gt;
&lt;sch:param name="tde" value="tei:te
xtClass"/&gt; &lt;/sch:pattern&gt;
</pre>

```

Schematron

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<elementRef key="classCode"/>
<elementRef key="catRef"/>
<elementRef key="keywords"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element textClass
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    ( tei_classCode | tei_catRef | tei_keyw
ords )*
}

```

<time>

<time> (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. [Dates and Times](#)]

Module
Attributes

core

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.dimensions
 - *@unit*
 - *@quantity*
 - *@extent*
 - *@precision*
 - *@scope*
- att.ranging
 - *@atLeast*
 - *@atMost*
 - *@min*
 - *@max*
 - *@confidence*
- att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.dateLike

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor

emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr
date del emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index lb mentioned
milestone name note num orig pb ptr q
ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title
unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
character data
As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck — <time when="11:45:
00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

May contain

Example

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element time
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
```

```

tei_att.datable.attributes,
tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
tei_att.editLike.attributes,
tei_att.typed.attributes,
( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.p
hrase | tei_model.global )*
}

```

<title>

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.canonical
 - *@key*
 - *@ref*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
 - *@period*
 - att.datable.w3c
 - *@when*
- att.typed
 - type
 - *@subtype*

type

classifies the title according to some convenient

typology.
Derived att.typed
from
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d
Sample main
values main
include: title
sub
(sub
ordi
nate)
subti
tle,
title
of
part
alt
(alte
rnat
e)
alter
nate
title,
often
in
anot
her
lang
uage
, by
whic
h the
work
is
also
kno
wn
short
abbr
eviat
ed
form
of
title

desc
(des
cript
ive)
desc
ripti
ve
para
phra
se of
the
work
funct
ionin
g as
a
title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any

parallel
titles,
may be
enclosed
within a
single
<title>
element.

level

indicates the
bibliographic level
for a title, that is,
whether it
identifies an
article, book,
journal, series, or
unpublished
material.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Legal values a
are: (analytic)
the
title
applies to
an
analytic
item, such
as
an
article,
poem,
or
other
work
published
as
part

of a
large
r
item.

m (mon
ogra
phic)
the
title
appli
es to
a
mon
ogra
ph
such
as a
book
or
othe
r
item
consi
dere
d to
be a
disti
nct
publi
catio
n,
inclu
ding
singl
e
volu
mes
of
multi
-
volu
me
work
s

j (jour

nal)
the
title
appli
es to
any
seria
l or
perio
dical
publi
catio
n
such
as a
jour
nal,
mag
azin
e, or
news
pape
r

s
(seri
es)
the
title
appli
es to
a
serie
s of
othe
rwis
e
disti
nct
publi
catio
ns
such
as a
colle
ction

u
(unp

ublis
hed)
the
title
appli
es to
any
unpu
blish
ed
mate
rial
(incl
udin
g
thes
es
and
disse
rtati
ons
unle
ss
publi
shed
by a
com
merc
ial
pres
s)

Note The level
of a title
is
sometime
s implied
by its
context:
for
example,
a title
appearin
g directly
within an
<analytic
>
element
is *ipso*

facto of level 'a', and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level 's'. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of Contained by

model.emphLike
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope corr date del desc editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
sic soCalled speaker stage term time

May contain

title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change
classCode creation distributor edition
extent funder language licence
principal seriesStmt sponsor titleStmt
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

Note

The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18-21 July 1989</title>

Example

<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>

Example

<title type="full">
<title type="main">Synthèse</title>
<title type="sub">an international journal for
epistemology, methodology and history of

```

    science</title>
</title>

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element title
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    attribute type { text }?,
    attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
    tei_macro.paraContent
}

```

<titlePage>

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module Attributes

```

textstructure
• att.global
• @xml:id
• @n
• @xml:lang
• @xml:space
• att.global.analytic
• @ana
• att.global.facs
• @facs
• att.global.linking
• @corresp
• @next
• @prev
• att.global.rendition
• @rend
• att.global.responsibility
• @cert
• @resp
• att.global.source
• @source
• att.typed

```

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • type • @subtype
type	classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.
	Derived from
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.e
	numerated
	Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the 'main' title page of a work.

**Member of
Contained by
May contain**

model.frontPart
textstructure: back front
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap graphic index lb milestone
note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph
imprimatur titlePart
<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF
Reading.</titlePart>

Example

```

<titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe w  
orthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>  
</docTitle>  
<docEdition>Now the fourth time cor  
rected and enlarged</docEdition>  
<byline>By T.D.</byline>  
<figure>  
<head>TP</head>  
<p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne  
to duste</p>  
<figDesc>Printers Ornament used by  
TP</figDesc>  
</figure>  
<docImprint>Printed at <name type= "place">London</name> for <name>  
T.P.</name>  
<date>1612.</date>  
</docImprint>  
</titlePage>

```

Content model

```

<content>  
<sequence>  
<classRef key="model.global"  
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
="0"/>  
<classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>  
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"  
minOccurs="0">  
<classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>  
<classRef key="model.global"/>  
</alternate>  
</sequence>  
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element titlePage  
{  
    tei_att.global.attributes,  
    tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,  
    attribute type { text }?,  
    (  
        tei_model.global*,  
        tei_model.titlepagePart,  
        ( tei_model.titlepagePart | tei_mode  
l.global )*  
    )
}

```

}

<titlePart>

<titlePart> (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module

Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source
- att.typed
 - type
 - @subtype

type

(type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Derived from

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Suggest main ed values include: main title of the work

Member of Contained by

May contain

[Def
ault]

sub

(sub
ordi
nate)
subti
tle of
the
work

alt

(alte
rnat
e)
alter
nativ
e
title
of
the
work

short

(shor
t)
abbr
eviat
ed
form
of
title

desc

(des
cript
ive)
desc
ripti
ve
para
phra
se of
the
work

model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart
textstructure: back docTitle front
titlePage

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit

corr date del desc emph expan foreign
 gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
 list listBibl mentioned milestone name
 note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled stage term time title unclear
 figures: figure formula table
 header: idno
 linking: anchor seg
 tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
 character data
 <docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">THE FORTU
 NES
 AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOU
 S
 Moll Flanders, &c.
 </titlePart>
 <titlePart type="desc">Who was BOR
 N in NEWGATE,
 And during a Life of continu'd Variety
 for
 Threescore Years, besides her Childh
 ood, was
 Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five
 times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
 once to her own Brother) Twelve Yea
 r a <hi>Thief,</hi>
 Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon
 </hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
 at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi
 >Honest</hi>, and died a
 <hi>Penitent</hi>. </titlePart>
 </docTitle>

Example

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/>
</content>
  
```

Schema Declaration

```

element titlePart
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt"
  | "short" | "desc" }?,
  tei_macro paraContent
}
  
```

<titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](#) [2.2. The File Description](#)]

Module

Attributes

header

- att.global
 - @xml:id
 - @n
 - @xml:lang
 - @xml:space
 - att.global.analytic
 - @ana
 - att.global.facs
 - @facs
 - att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
 - att.global.rendition
 - @rend
 - att.global.responsibility
 - @cert
 - @resp
 - att.global.source
 - @source

header: fileDesc

core: author editor respStmt title

header: funder principal sponsor

<titleStmt>

```
<title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Nor  
bert: a machine-readable transcription  
</title>  
<respStmt>  
  <resp>compiled by</resp>  
  <name>P.J. Lucas</name>  
</respStmt>  
</titleStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
<sequence>  
  <elementRef key="title"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
    ="1"/>  
  <classRef key="model.respLike"  
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs  
    ="0"/>  
</sequence>
```

</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element titleStmt
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    ( tei_title+, tei_model.respLike* )
}
```

<trailer>

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions](#) [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

Module Attributes

textstructure

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*
- att.written
 - *@hand*

Member of Contained by

model.divBottomPart
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front

May contain

group postscript
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
<trailer>
 <l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>
 I</hi> send,</l>
 <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of
 <lb/>
 <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
</trailer>
From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element trailer
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.placement.attributes,
  tei_att.typed.attributes,
  tei_att.written.attributes,
  (
    text
    | tei_lg
    | tei_model.gLike
```

```

| tei_model.phrase
| tei_model.inter
| tei_model.llike
| tei_model.global
)*
}

```

<unclear>

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.
[\[12.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions\]](#)

Module

Attributes

core

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*
 - *@xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
 - att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
 - att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
 - att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
 - *@unit*
 - *@quantity*
 - *@extent*
 - *@precision*
 - *@scope*
- att.ranging
 - *@atLeast*
 - *@atMost*
 - *@min*
 - *@max*
 - *@confidence*

- att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*

reason

indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional
Datatype $1\text{--}\infty$

occurrences of teidata .enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggest **illegal**
ed (illegal)
values (ible)
include: **inaudible**

(inaudible)

faded (faded)

background_noise (background noise)

(bac kgro und nois e)

eccentric_ductus (eccentric ductus) indicates illegibility

due
to an
unus
ual,
awk
ward
, or
inco
mpe
tent
exec
ution
of a
glyp
h or
glyp
hs

```
<div>
<head>Rx</
head>
<p>500 mg <uncl
ear reason="illegib
le">placebo</
unclear>
</p>
</div>
```

Note One or
more
words
may be
used to
describe
the
reason;
usually
each
word will
refer to a
single
cause.

agent

Where the
difficulty in
transcription arises
from damage,
categorizes the
cause of the
damage, if it can

Member of**Contained by**

model.choicePart
model.pPart.transcriptional
analysis: pc s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
biblScope choice corr date del editor
emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
l label lg mentioned name note num
orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs

be identified.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Sample **rubbing**
values dam
include: age
resul
ts
from
rubb
ing
of
the
leaf
edge
s

mildew
dam
age
resul
ts
from
mild
ew
on
the
leaf
surfa
ce

smoke
dam
age
resul
ts
from
smo
ke

sic soCalled speaker stage term time
title unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit
corr date del desc emph expan foreign
gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg
list listBibl mentioned milestone name
note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic
soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
character data

May contain

The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter [22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility](#).

The `<damage>`, `<gap>`, ``, `<unclear>` and `<supplied>` elements may be closely allied in use. See section [12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](#) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The `hand` attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section [12.3.2.1. Document Hands](#).

Example

`<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u>`

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element unclear
{
  tei_att.global.attributes,
  tei_att.cmc.attributes,
  tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
  tei_att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "illegible"
        | "inaudible"
        | "faded"
        | "background_noise"
        | "eccentric_ductus"
      )+
    }
  }?,
  attribute agent { text }?,
  tei_macro.paraContent
}
```

<val>

<val> (value) contains a single attribute value. [23. Documentation Elements
23.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

Module

Attributes

tagdocs

- att.global
 - @*xml:id*
 - @*n*
 - @*xml:lang*
 - @*xml:space*
 - att.global.analytic
 - @*ana*
 - att.global.facs
 - @*facs*
 - att.global.linking
 - @*corresp*
 - @*next*
 - @*prev*

- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*

[model.phrase.xml](#)

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author
 biblScope corr date del desc editor
 emph expan foreign gloss head hi item
 l label mentioned name note num orig
 p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs
 sic soCalled speaker stage term time
 title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change
 classCode creation distributor edition
 extent funder language licence
 principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline
 docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint imprimatur opener salute
 signed titlePart trailer

Character data only

<val>unknown</val>

```
<content>
<textNode/>
</content>
```

May contain Example Content model

Schema Declaration

```
element val { tei_global.attributes,  

  text }
```

<w>

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

[[18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](#) [18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](#)]

Module Attributes

analysis

- att.global
 - *@xml:id*
 - *@n*
 - *@xml:lang*

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
 - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
 - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
 - *@corresp*
 - *@next*
 - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
 - *@rend*
- att.global.responsibility
 - *@cert*
 - *@resp*
- att.global.source
 - *@source*
- att.cmc
 - *@generatedBy*
- att.linguistic
 - *@lemma*
 - *@lemmaRef*
 - *@pos*
 - *@msd*
 - *@join*
 - att.lexicographic.normalized
 - *@norm*
 - *@orig*
- att.notated
 - *@notation*
- att.segLike
 - *@function*
 - att.datcat
 - *@datcat*
 - *@valueDatcat*
 - *@targetDatcat*
 - att.fragmentable
 - *@part*
- att.typed
 - *@type*
 - *@subtype*

**Member of
Contained by**

model.segLike

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl
 biblScope corr date del editor emph
 expan foreign gloss head hi item l label
 mentioned name note num orig p
 pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic
 soCalled speaker stage term time title

May contain

unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition
extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline
docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint imprimatur opener salute
signed titlePart trailer
analysis: interp interpGrp pc w
core: abbr add choice corr del expan
gap hi index lb milestone note orig pb
q reg sic unclear
figures: figure
linking: anchor seg
character data

Example

This example is adapted from the Folger Library's Early Modern English Drama version of [The Wits: a Comedy](#) by William Davenant.

```
<l>
<w lemma="it" pos="pn"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-0100">IT</
w>
<w lemma="have" pos="vvz"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0110">hath</w>
<w lemma="be" pos="vvn"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0120">been</w>
<w lemma="say" pos="vvn"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0130">said</w>
<w lemma="of" pos="acp-p"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-0140">of</
w>
<w lemma="old" pos="j"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-0150">old</
w>
<pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0160">, </pc>
<w lemma="that" pos="cs"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0170">that</w>
<w lemma="play" pos="vvz"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-0180">
<choice>
```

```
<orig>Playes</orig>
<reg>Plays</reg>
</choice>
</w>
<w lemma="be" pos="vzb"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-0190">are</
w>
<w lemma="feast" pos="n2"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0200">Feasts</w>
<pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0210">, </pc>
</l>
<l xml:id="A19883-e100220">
<w lemma="poet" pos="n2"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0220">Poets</w>
<w lemma="the" pos="d"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-0230">the</
w>
<w lemma="cook" pos="n2"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-0240">
<choice>
<orig>Cookes</orig>
<reg>Cooks</reg>
</choice>
</w>
<pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0250">, </pc>
<w lemma="and" pos="cc"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0260">and</w>
<w lemma="the" pos="d"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-0270">the</
w>
<w lemma="spectator" pos="n2"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0280">Spectators</w>
<w lemma="guest" pos="n2"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0290">Guests</w>
<pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0300">, </pc>
</l>
<l xml:id="A19883-e100230">
<w lemma="the" pos="d"
xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0310">The</w>
```

```

<w lemma="actor" pos="n2"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0320">Actors</w>
<w lemma="waiter" pos="n2"
      xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0330">Waiters</w>
<pc xml:id="A19883-003-a-
0340">:</pc>
<!-- ... -->
</l>
```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<elementRef key="seg"/>
<elementRef key="w"/>
<elementRef key="m"/>
<elementRef key="c"/>
<elementRef key="pc"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<classRef key="model.lPart"/>
<classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
<classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element w
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.cmc.attributes,
    tei_att.linguistic.attributes,
    tei_att.notated.attributes,
    tei_att.segLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    (
        text
        | tei_model.gLike
        | tei_seg
        | tei_w
        | m
        | c
        | tei_pc
        | tei_model.global
        | tei_model.lPart
        | tei_model.hiLike
```

```
| tei_model.pPart.edit  
)*  
}
```

Model classes

model.addrPart

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.6.2. Addresses](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	address
Members	<i>model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs] addrLine</i>

model.addressLike

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	<i>address</i>

model.attributable

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [[3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter sp
Members	<i>model.quoteLike[cit]</i>

model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	availability
Members	<i>licence</i>

model.biblLike

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy
Members	<i>bibl listBibl</i>

model.biblPart

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	bibl
Members	<i>model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl edition extent relatedItem</i>

model.choicePart

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	choice
Members	<i>abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear</i>

model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	argument body div epigraph figure postscript
Members	<i>model.cmc model.divPart[model.ILike[l]] model.pLike[p] lg sp model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit]] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl] model.egLike[eg] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike[stage]] q</i>
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates](#)]

Module	tei
---------------	-----

Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	<i>date time</i>
model.descLike	
Module	tei
Used by	category gap graphic interp interpGrp
Members	taxonomy <i>desc</i>
model.describedResource	
Module	tei
Used by	teiCorpus
Members	<i>TEI teiCorpus</i>
model.divBottom	
Module	tei
Used by	body div figure front group lg list table
Members	<i>model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed trailer]</i> <i>model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]</i>
model.divBottomPart	
Module	tei
Used by	back model.divBottom postscript
Members	<i>closer postscript signed trailer</i>
model.divGenLike	
Module	tei
Used by	body div
Members	<i>divGen</i>

model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module

tei

Used by

back body div front

Members

div

model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

macro.specialPara model.common

Members

model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] lg sp

Note

Note that this element class does not include members of the *model.inter* class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

[[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

body div group lg list

Members

model.divTopPart[model.headLike[hea

d] opener signed]

model.divWrapper[argument byline

dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

salute]

model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

model.divTop postscript

Members

model.headLike[head] opener signed

model.divWrapper

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

model.divBottom model.divTop

Members

argument byline dateline docAuthor

docDate epigraph salute

model.egLike

model.egLike groups elements containing examples or illustrations. [[23.1.1. Phrase Level Terms](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	cit model.inter
Members	<i>eg</i>

model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	<i>code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title</i>

model.encodingDescPart

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module	tei
Used by	encodingDesc
Members	<i>classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl</i>

model.frontPart

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [[7.1. Front and Back Matter](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	back front
Members	<i>model.frontPart.drama divGen listBibl titlePage</i>

model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front group head l lg list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model paraPart opener postscript sp table text time titlePage trailer w

Members	<i>model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta[index interp interpGrp] model.milestoneLike[anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure</i>
----------------	---

model.global.edit

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	<i>gap</i>

model.global.meta

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	model.global
Members	<i>index interp interpGrp</i>
Note	Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.graphicLike

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [[3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	cit figure formula model.phrase table
Members	<i>formula graphic</i>

model.headLike

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module	tei
Used by	argument divGen figure listBibl model.divTopPart table

Members	<i>head</i>
model.hiLike	
Module	tei
Used by	formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w <i>hi q</i>
Members	
model.highlighted	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	<i>model.emphLike[code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi q]</i>
model.imprintPart	
Module	tei
Used by	model.biblPart
Members	<i>biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher</i>
model.inter	
Module	tei
Used by	head l macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart trailer
Members	<i>model.attributable[model.quoteLike[ci t]] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl] model.egLike[eg] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list table] model.oddDecl model.stageLike[stage]</i>
model.ILike	
Module	tei

Used by	head lg model.divPart model.paraPart sp trailer <i>l</i>
Members	

model.labelLike

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module	tei
Used by	lg model.inter
Members	<i>desc label</i>

model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited <i>model.emphLike[code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi q] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[a ddress] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agen t[name] model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNam ePart] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan] model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml[att gi val] model.ptrLike[ptr ref]</i>
Members	

model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [[3.8. Lists](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	back model.inter sourceDesc sp
Members	<i>list table</i>

model.measureLike

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.6.3. Numbers and Measures](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	<i>num</i>

model.milestoneLike

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

listBibl model.global

Members

anchor lb milestone pb

model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module

tei

Used by

model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members

model.nameLike.agent[name]

model.offsetLike

model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs

Note

A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

model.nameLike respStmt

Members

name

Note

This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

model.global notesStmt

Members

note

model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module

tei

Used by

availability back editionStmt

editorialDecl encodingDesc front

langUsage model.divPart projectDesc

Members

publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl
seriesStmt sourceDesc sp
p

model.pLike.front

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module

Used by

Members

tei
back front
argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](#)]

Module

Used by

Members

tei
bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart] idno rs]

model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

Module

Used by

Members

tei
bibl model.phrase pc w
model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic unclear]

model.pPart.editorial

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

Module

Used by

Members

tei
model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
abbr choice expan

model.pPart.transcriptional

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	lg model.pPart.edit
Members	<i>add corr del orig reg sic unclear</i>

model.paraPart

model.paraPart groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [[3.1. Paragraphs](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	macro.paraContent
Members	<i>model.gLike</i> <i>model.global[model.global.edit[gap]]</i> <i>model.global.meta[index interp interpGrp]</i> <i>model.milestoneLike[anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure]</i> <i>model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit]] model.biblLike[bibl listBibl] model.egLike[eg] model.labelLike[desc label]]</i> <i>model.listLike[list table]</i> <i>model.oddDecl</i> <i>model.stageLike[stage] model.lLike[l]</i> <i>model.phrase[model.graphicLike[formula graphic]]</i> <i>model.highlighted[model.emphLike[code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi q]]</i> <i>model.lPart</i> <i>model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date time]]</i> <i>model.measureLike[num]</i> <i>model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike]</i> <i>model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart idno rs]]</i> <i>model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expand]]</i> <i>model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic unclear]]</i> <i>model.pPart.msdesc</i> <i>model.phrase.xml[att gi val]</i> <i>model.ptrLike[ptr ref]</i>

*model.segLike[pc s seg w]
model.specDescLike] lg*

model.phrase

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

byline closer date dateline docImprint
head l macro.phraseSeq
macro.specialPara model.paraPart
opener time trailer

Members

*model.graphicLike[formula graphic]
model.highlighted[model.emphLike[code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi q]]
model.lPart
model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date time]
model.measureLike[num]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] model.offsetLike
model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart idno rs]]
model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan]
model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic unclear]]
model.pPart.msdesc
[model.phrase.xml](#)[att gi val]
model.ptrLike[ptr ref]
model.segLike[pc s seg w]
model.specDescLike*

Note

This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.phrase.xml

model.phrase.xml groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values. [[23. Documentation Elements](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members

att gi val

model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a

place.	
Module	tei
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	<i>model.placeNamePart</i>
model.profileDescPart	
model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei
Used by	profileDesc
Members	<i>creation langUsage textClass</i>
model.ptrLike	
model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.	
[3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei
Used by	bibl cit model.limitedPhrase
Members	<i>model.phrase</i> <i>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</i> <i>relatedItem</i> <i>ptr ref</i>
model.publicationStmtPart.agency	
model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent.	[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	<i>authority distributor publisher</i>
Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.
	See also <i>model.publicationStmtPart.detail</i> .
model.publicationStmtPart.detail	
model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header.	[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
Module	tei
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	<i>model.ptrLike[ptr ref] address</i>

Note

availability date idno pubPlace
A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.

See also
`model.publicationStmtPart.agency`.

model.quoteLike

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module

tei

Used by

`model.attributable`

Members

cit

model.resource

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

TEI `teiCorpus`

Members

text

model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module

tei

Used by

`editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt`

Members

author editor funder principal

respStmt sponsor

model.segLike

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](#) [18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

`bibl model.phrase`

Members

pc s seg w

Note

The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

model.stageLike

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar

things defined by the module for performance texts. [[7.3. Other Types of Performance Text](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	lg model.inter sp
Members	<i>stage</i>
Note	Stage directions are members of class <i>inter</i> : that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

Module	tei
Used by	teiHeader
Members	<i>encodingDesc profileDesc</i>

model.titlepagePart

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [[4.6. Title Pages](#)]

Module	tei
Used by	titlePage
Members	<i>argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart</i>

Attribute classes

att.anchoring

att.anchoring (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

Module	tei
Members	<i>note</i>
Attributes	<i>anchored</i>
	(anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.typeValue
Default	true
Note	In

modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3-4'). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value *true* indicates that such an explicit location

is indicated in the copy text; the value *false* indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

targetEnd

(target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional
Datatype 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespa

Note ce
This attribute is retained for backward compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in [17.2.4.6. range\(\)](#).

Example

<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses
necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuor temporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234"/> totaliter expediui...</p>
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234">
<note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Temp

ora, so called dry fast days.

</note>

<note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.

</note>

</noteGrp>

att.ascribed

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](#)]

Module

tei

Members

att.ascribed.directed[q sp stage]

Attributes

change

who

indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <role> elements in the <castList> using the *who* attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="Baraldo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="Fra
```

```
ncisco">Francisco
</role>
<roleDesc>a soldi
er</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barna
rdo">
<speaker>Bernar
do</speaker>
<l n="1">Who's t
here?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Franci
sco">
<speaker>Francis
co</speaker>
<l n="2">Nay, ans
wer me: stand, and
unfold yourself.</
l>
</sp>
```

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.ascribed.directed

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](#)]

Module
Members
Attributes

tei	
<i>q sp stage</i>	
• att.ascribed	
• @who	
toWhom	indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.
Status	Optional
Datatype	1-∞
	occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespace
	In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the <i>toWhom</i> attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes <i>toWhom</i> to indicate the directionality of the action.
	<castItem type="role">
	<role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
	</castItem>
	<castItem type="role">
	<role xml:id="lov"

```

>Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="r
ole">
  <role xml:id="serv
">A servant</
role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp toWhom="#lo
v"
  who="#emil">
    <speaker>Emil.</
speaker>
    <l n="1">My love
!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp toWhom="#e
mil"
    who="#lov">
    <speaker>Lov.</
speaker>
    <l n="2">I have n
o Witness of my No
ble Birth</l>
    <stage toWhom="
#serv"
      who="emil">Poin
ting to her Woman.
    </stage>
    <l>But that poor
helpless wretch—
  </l>
  </sp>

```

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section [2.4.6.](#) [Correspo](#)ndence

Description,
rather
than a
toWhom
attribute.

att.breaking

att.breaking provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements](#)]

Module	tei	
Members	<i>lb milestone pb</i>	
Attributes	break	indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.
		Status Recommended
		Datatype teidata.e
		numerated
		Sample yes
		values the
		include elem
		ent
		beari
		ng
		this
		attri
		butte
		is
		consi
		dere
		d to
		mark
		the
		end
		of
		any
		adja
		cent

orth
ogra
phic
toke
n
irres
pecti
ve of
the
pres
ence
of
any
adja
cent
whit
espa
ce

no

the
elem
ent
beari
ng
this
attri
bute
is
consi
dere
d not
to
mark
the
end
of
any
adja
cent
orth
ogra
phic
toke
n
irres
pecti
ve of
the

presence
of
any
adjacent
white
space
maybe
the
encoding
does
not
take
any
position
on
this
issue

In the following
lines from the
'Dream of the
Rood', the words
lāðost and *reord-
berendum* each
start on one line
and continue onto
the next.

<ab> ...epesa tome
iu icpæs ȝeporden
pita heardoft .
leodum la<lb brea
k="no"/> ðost ærb
an ichim lifes
peȝ rihtne ȝerymd
e reord be<lb brea
k="no"/>
rendum hpæt me þ
aȝeƿeorðode puldr
es ealdor ofer...
</ab>

att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module	tei	
Members	<i>gloss</i> <i>ptr</i> <i>ref</i> <i>term</i>	
Attributes	cRef	(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.te
	xt	
Note	The value of <i>cRef</i> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 17.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference	

	<p>to the intended target.</p>
	<p>The <code><refsDec l></code> to use may be indicated with the <i>decls</i> attribute.</p>
	<p>Currently these Guideline s only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <code><ptr></code> element.</p>

att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

Module Members

Attributes

tei
att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs] authority bibl catDesc date distributor docAuthor docTitle funder principal publisher resp respStmt sponsor term time title key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.te
xt

```
<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
    ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other external library-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project.

ref

(reference)
provides an explicit means of locating a

full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype $1\text{--}\infty$

occurrences of teidata separated by whitespace

<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies

several distinct entities.

Example

In this contrived example, a canonical reference to the same organisation is provided in four different ways.

```
<author n="1">
  <name ref="http://
nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-
427308.html"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa-
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>
```

```
<author n="2">
  <name ref="nzvn:427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa-
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>
```

```
<author n="3">
  <name ref="./
named_entities.xml#o427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa-
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>
```

```
<author n="4">
  <name key="name-427308"
    type="organisation">New Zealand Pa-
liament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>
```

The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a `<prefixDef>` that declares how the `nzvn` prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named `named_entities.xml` be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.

The `key` attribute is more flexible and

Note

general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the *ref* attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.

These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *key* and *ref* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization, for interchange.

att.citing

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

biblScope

unit

identifies the unit
of information
conveyed by the
element.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Suggest volume

ed (volu
values me)
include: the
elem
ent
cont
ains
a
volu
me
num
ber.

issue

the
elem
ent
cont
ains
an
issue
num
ber,
or
volu
me
and
issue
num
bers.

page
(pag
e)
the
elem
ent
cont
ains
a
page
num
ber
or
page
rang
e.

line
the
elem
ent
cont
ains
a
line
num
ber
or
line
rang
e.

chapter

(cha
pter)
the
elem
ent
cont
ains
a
chap
ter
indic
ation
(num
ber
and/
or
title)

part
the
elem
ent
ident
ifies
a
part
of a
book
or
colle
ction

.

column
the
elem
ent
ident
ifies
a
colu
mn.

entry
the
elem
ent
ident
ifies
an

entry
y
number
or
label
in a
list
of
entries.

from	specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the <i>unit</i> attribute. Status Optional Datatype teidata.w ord
to	specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the <i>unit</i> attribute. Status Optional Datatype teidata.w ord

att.cmc

att.cmc (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.

Module

Members

Attributes

tei	
abbr add address anchor argument	
bibl byline choice cit closer corr date	
dateline del desc docAuthor docDate	
emph epigraph expan figure foreign	
formula gap gloss graphic head hi idno	
index interp interpGrp l label lb lg list	
listBibl mentioned milestone name	
note num opener orig p pb pc	
postscript ptr q ref reg rs s salute seg	
sic signed soCalled stage table term	
time title trailer unclear w	
generatedBy	(generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was

generated in a
CMC environment.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Schematron <sch:rule
context= "tei:*[@generatedBy]">>
<sch:assert test="ancestor-or-self::tei:post">The
@generatedBy attribute is for use
within a <post> element.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Suggest human values include: the content
was 'naturally' type
d or spok
en by a hum
an user

template the content

was
gene
rate
d
after
a
hum
an
user
activ
ated
a
temp
late
for
its
inser
tion

system
the
cont
ent
was
gene
rate
d by
the
syste
m,
i.e.
the
CMC
envir
onm
ent

bot
the
cont
ent
was
gene
rate
d by
a
bot,
i.e. a
non-

hum
an
agen
t,
typic
ally
one
that
is
not
part
of
the
CMC
envir
onm
ent
itself

**unspeci
fied**

the
cont
ent
was
gene
rate
d by
an
unkn
own
or
unsp
ecifi
ed
proc
ess

automatic system
message in chat:
user moves on to
another chatroom
<post generatedBy
="system"
rend="color:blue"
type="event"
who="#system">
<p>
<name corresp="

#A02"
 type="nickname"
 >McMike</name>
 geht
 in einen anderen
 Raum: <name type
 ="roomname">Kre
 uzfahrt</name>
 </p>
 </post>
 automatic system
 message in chat:
 user enters a
 chatroom
 <post generatedBy
 ="system"
 type="event">
 <p>
 <name corresp="

#A08"
 type="nickname"
 >c_bo</name> bet
 ritt
 den Raum. </p>
 </post>
 automatic system
 message in chat:
 user changes his
 font color
 <post generatedBy
 ="system"
 rend="color:red"
 type="event">
 <p>
 <name corresp="

#A08"
 type="nickname"
 >c_bo</name> hat
 die
 Farbe gewechselt
.

 </p>
 </post>
 An automatic
 signature of user
 including an
 automatic
 timestamp

(Wikipedia discussion, anonymized). The specification of *generatedBy* at the inner element `<signed>` is meant to override the specification at the outer element `<post>`. This is generally possible when the outer *generatedBy* value is "human".

```
<post generatedBy="human" indentLevel="2" synch="#t00394407">
```

```
    type="standard" who="#WU00005582">
```

<p> Kurze Nachfrage: Die Hieros für den Goldnamen sta
mmen

auch von Beckera
th gem. Literatur ?

Grüße --</p>

```
    <signed generatedBy="template" rend="inline">
```

```
        <gap reason="signatureContent"/>
```

```
        <time generatedBy="template">18:50, 22. Okt. 2008 (C  
EST)</time>
```

```
    </signed>
```

```
    </post>
```

Wikipedia talk
page: user
signature

```
    <post generatedBy="human" type="written">
```

```
        <!-- ... main conten
```

```

t of posting ... -->
<signed generated
By="template">
  <gap reason="sig
natureContent"/>
  <time generatedB
y="template">12:0
1, 12. Jun. 2009 (C
EST)</time>
</signed>
</post>
```

att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei	
<i>author change creation date docDate</i>	
<i>editor funder idno licence name</i>	
<i>principal resp sponsor time title</i>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.datable.w3c • <i>@when</i>
period	supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s, <date>s, or <event>s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
	Status Optional Datatype 1-∞
	occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace

Note

This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If

the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](#) [14.4. Dates](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

att.datable[author change creation date docDate editor funder idno licence name principal resp sponsor time title]

when

supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.te
mporal.w
3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
  <date when="194
5-10-24">24 Oct 4
5</date>
  <date when="199
6-09-
24T07:25:00Z">Se
ptember 24th, 199
6 at 3:25 in the mo
rning</date>
  <time when="199
9-01-04T20:42:00-
05:00">Jan 4 1999
```

at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:1
2:38">fourteen twe
lve and 38 seconds
</time>
<date when="196
2-10">October of 1
962</date>
<date when="--
12">June 12th</
date>
<date when="---
01">the first of the
month</date>
<date when="--
08">August</
date>
<date when="200
6">MMVI</date>
<date when="005
6">AD 56</date>
<date when="--
0056">56 BC</
date>
</p>

This list begins in
the year 1632, mor
e precisely on Trini
ty Sunday, i.e. the
Sunday after
Pentecost, in that
year the

<date calendar="#"
julian"
when="1632-06-
06">27th of May (o
ld style)</date>.

<opener>
<dateline>
<placeName>Dor
chester, Village,</
placeName>

<date when="182
8-03-02">March 2
d. 1828.</date>

</dateline>
<salute>To
Mrs. Cornell,</

Schematron

```
salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]">
<sch:report role="nonfatal"
test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

Example

Note

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value *0000* to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value *-0001* should be used.

att.datcat

att.datcat provides attributes that are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by an external taxonomy, in this way establishing the identity of information containers and values, and providing means of interpreting them. [[10.5.2. Lexical View 19.3.](#)]

Other Atomic Feature Values]

Module	tei	
Members	<i>att.segLike[pc s seg w] category taxonomy</i>	
Attributes	datcat	provides a pointer to a definition of, and/or general information about, (a) an information container (element or attribute) or (b) a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by referencing an external taxonomy or ontology. If <i>valueDatcat</i> is present in the immediate context, this attribute takes on role (a), while <i>valueDatcat</i> performs role (b).
	Status	Optional
	Datatype	$1\text{--}\infty$
		occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by white space
	valueDatcat	provides a definition of, and/or general information about a value of an information container (element content or attribute value), by reference to an external taxonomy

or ontology. Used especially where a contrast with *datcat* is needed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞

occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated by
white space

targetDatcat

provides a definition of, and/or general information about, information structure of an object referenced or modeled by the containing element, by reference to an external taxonomy or ontology. This attribute has the characteristics of the *datcat* attribute, except that it addresses not its containing element, but an object that is being referenced or modeled by its containing element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞

occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated by

white space

Example

The example below presents the TEI encoding of the name-value pair <part of speech, common noun>, where the name (key) ‘part of speech’ is abbreviated as ‘POS’, and the value, ‘common noun’ is symbolized by ‘NN’. The entire name-value pair is encoded by means of the element <f>. In TEI XML, that element acts as the container, labeled with the *name* attribute. Its contents may be complex or simple. In the case at hand, the content is the symbol ‘NN’. The *datcat* attribute relates the feature *name* (i.e., the key) to the data category ‘part of speech’, while the attribute *valueDatcat* relates the feature *value* to the data category *common noun*. Both these data categories should be defined in an external and preferably open reference taxonomy or ontology.

```
<fs>
<f datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-
ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"
name="POS">
<symbol value="NN"
valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/
11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-
224d-6f94-eecbe6861545"/>
</f>
<!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

‘NN’ is the symbol for common noun used e.g. in the CLAWS-7 tagset defined by the University Centre for Computer Corpus Research on Language at the University of Lancaster. The very same data category used for tagging an early version of the British National Corpus, and coming from the BNC Basic (C5) tagset, uses the symbol ‘NN0’ (rather than ‘NN’). Making these values semantically interoperable would be extremely difficult without a human

expert if they were not anchored in a single point of an established reference taxonomy of morphosyntactic data categories. In the case at hand, the string 'http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545' is both a persistent identifier of the data category in question, as well as a pointer to a shared definition of *common noun*. While the symbols 'NN', 'NN0', and many others (often coming from languages other than English) are implicitly members of the container category 'part of speech', it is sometimes useful not to rely on such an implicit relationship but rather use an explicit identifier for that data category, to distinguish it from other morphosyntactic data categories, such as gender, tense, etc. For that purpose, the above example uses the *datcat* attribute to reference a definition of *part of speech*. The reference taxonomy in this example is the [CLARIN Concept Registry](#). If the feature structure markup exemplified above is to be repeated many times in a single document, it is much more efficient to gather the persistent identifiers in a single place and to only reference them, implicitly or directly, from feature structure markup. The following example is much more concise than the one above and relies on the concepts of feature structure declaration and feature value library, discussed in chapter FS.

```
<fs>
  <f fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS"
  "/>
  <!-- ... -->
</fs>
```

The assumption here is that the relevant feature values are collected in a place that the annotation document in question has access to — preferably,

a single document per linguistic resource, for example an `<fsdDecl>` that is XIncluded as a sibling of `<text>` or a child of `<encodingDesc>`; a `<taxonomy>` available resource-wide (e.g., in a shared header) is also an option. The example below presents an `<fvLib>` element that collects the relevant feature values (most of them omitted). At the same time, this example shows one way of encoding a *tagset*, i.e., an established inventory of values of (in the case at hand) morphosyntactic categories.

```
<fvLib n="POS values">
  <symbol datcat="http://
    hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
    396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
    7c344c5f26c3"
    value="NN" xml:id="commonNoun"/>
  <symbol datcat="http://
    hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
    1371_fbefbd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-
    88ee16b944ae"
    value="NP" xml:id="properNoun"/>
<!-- ... -->
</fvLib>
```

Note that these Guidelines do not prescribe a specific choice between *datcat* and *valueDatcat* in such cases. The former is the generic way of referencing a data category, whereas the latter is more specific, in that it references a data category that represents a value. The choice between them comes into play where a single element — or a tight element complex, such as the `<f>/<symbol>` complex illustrated above — make it necessary or useful to distinguish between the container data category and its value.

In the context of dictionaries designed with semantic interoperability in mind, the following example ensures that the `<pos>` element is interpreted as the same information container as in the

Example

case of the example of *<f
name="POS">* above.

```
<gramGrp>  
  <pos datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/  
    11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-  
    ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3"  
    valueDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/  
    11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-  
    224d-6f94-eecbe6861545">NN</pos>  
</gramGrp>
```

Efficiency of this type of interoperable markup demands that the references to the particular data categories should best be provided in a single place within the dictionary (or a single place within the project), rather than being repeated inside every entry. For the container elements, this can be achieved at the level of *<tagUsage>*, although here, the *valueDatcat* attribute should be used, because it is not the *<tagUsage>* element that is associated with the relevant data category, but rather the element *<pos>* (or *<case>*, etc.) that is described by *<tagUsage>*:

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">  
  <!-- ... -->  
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-  
    c.org/ns/1.0">  
    <tagUsage gi="pos"  
      targetDatcat="http://  
      hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-  
      396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-  
      7c344c5f26c3">Contains the part of sp  
eech.</tagUsage>  
    <tagUsage gi="case"  
      targetDatcat="http://  
      hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-  
      1840_9f4e319c-f233-6c90-9117-  
      7270e215f039">Contains information  
about the grammatical case that the de  
scribed form is inflected for.</  
tagUsage>  
  <!-- ... -->  
  </namespace>  
</tagsDecl>
```

Another possibility is to shorten the

URIs by means of the <prefixDef> mechanism, as illustrated below:

```
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
  ="pos"
    replacementPattern="http://
    hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
    396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-
    7c344c5f26c3"/>
  <prefixDef ident="ccr" matchPattern
  ="adj"
    replacementPattern="http://
    hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-
    1230_23653c21-fca1-edf8-fd7c-
    3df2d6499157"/>
</listPrefixDef>
<!-- ... -->
<entry>
<!--...-->
<form>
  <orth>isotope</orth>
</form>
<gramGrp>
  <pos datcat="ccr:pos"
    valueDatcat="ccr:adj">adj</pos>
</gramGrp>
<!--...-->
</entry>
```

This mechanism creates implications that are not always wanted, among others, in the case at hand, suggesting that the identifiers 'pos' and 'adj' belong to a namespace associated with the CLARIN Concept Repository (CCR), whereas that is solely a shorthand mechanism whose scope is the current resource. Documenting this clearly in the header of the dictionary is therefore advised. Yet another possibility is to associate the information about the relationship between a TEI markup element and the data category that it is intended to model already at the level of modeling the dictionary resource, that is, at the level of the ODD, in the <equiv> element that is a child of <elementSpec> or <attDef>.

Example

The <taxonomy> element is a handy tool for encoding taxonomies that are later referenced by att.datcat attributes, but it can also act as an intermediary device, for example holding a fragment of an external taxonomy (or ‘flattening’ an external ontology) that is relevant to the project or document at hand. (It is also imaginable that, for the purpose of the project at hand, the local <taxonomy> element combines vocabularies that originate from more than one external taxonomy or ontology.) In such cases, the <taxonomy> creates a local layer of indirection: the att.datcat attributes internal to the resource may reference the <category> elements stored in the header (as well as the <taxonomy> element itself), whereas these same <category> and <taxonomy> elements use att.datcat attributes to reference the original taxonomy or ontology.

```
<encodingDesc>
<!-- ... -->
<classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
    <taxonomy datcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
index.html"
        xml:id="UD-SYN">
        <desc>
            <term>UD syntactic relations</
term>
        </desc>
        <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/
acl.html"
            xml:id="acl">
            <catDesc>
                <term>acl</term>: Clausal modifi
er of noun (adjectival clause)</
catDesc>
            </category>
            <category valueDatcat="https://
universaldependencies.org/u/dep/acl-
relcl.html"
```

```

xml:id="acl_relcl">
<catDesc>
  <term>acl:relcl</term>: relative clause modifier</catDesc>
</category>
<category valueDatcat="https://universaldependencies.org/u/dep/advcl.html">

```

```

  xml:id="advcl">
  <catDesc>
    <term>advcl</term>: Adverbial clause modifier</catDesc>
  </category>
  <!-- ... -->
  </taxonomy>
  </classDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

The above fragment was excerpted from the GB subset of the [ParlaMint project](#) in April 2023, and enriched with att.datcat attributes for the purpose of illustrating the mechanism described here. Note that, in the ideal case, the values of att.datcat attributes should be persistent identifiers, and that the addressing scheme of Universal Dependencies is treated here as persistent for the sake of illustration. Note also that the contrast between *datcat* used on <taxonomy> on the one hand, and the *valueDatcat* used on <category> on the other, is not mandatory: both kinds of relations could be encoded by means of the generic *datcat* attribute, but using the former for the container and the latter for the content is more user-friendly. The *targetDatcat* attribute is designed to be used in, e.g., feature structure declarations, and is analogous to the *targetLang* attribute of the att.pointing class, in that it describes the object that is being referenced, rather than the referencing object.

```

<fDecl name="POS"
  targetDatcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-396_5a972b93-2294-ab5c-a541-7c344c5f26c3">
```

Example

```
<fDescr>part of speech (morphosyntactic category)</fDescr>
```

```
<vRange>
```

```
<vAlt>
```

```
  <symbol datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1256_7ec6083c-23d4-224d-6f94-eecbe6861545"
```

```
    value="NN"/>
```

```
  <symbol datcat="http://hdl.handle.net/11459/CCR_C-1371_fbefbd9ec-a7f4-9a36-d6e9-88ee16b944ae"
```

```
    value="NP"/>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
```

```
</vAlt>
```

```
</vRange>
```

```
</fDecl>
```

Above, the `<fDecl>` uses *targetDatcat*, because if it were to use *datcat*, it would be asserting that it is an instance of the container data category *part of speech*, whereas it is not — it models a container (`<f>`) that encodes a part of speech. Note also that it is the `<f>` that is modeled above, not its values, which are used as direct references to data categories; hence the use of *datcat* in the `<symbol>` element.

The `att.datcat` attributes can be used for any sort of taxonomies. The example below illustrates their usefulness for describing usage domain labels in dictionaries on the example of the *Dicionário da Língua Portuguesa* by António de Moraes Silva, retro-digitised in the [MORDigital project](#).

```
<!-- in the dictionary header -->
```

```
<encodingDesc>
```

```
<classDecl>
```

```
  <taxonomy xml:id="domains">
```

```
<!--...-->
```

```
  <category xml:id="domain.medical_and_health_sciences">
```

```
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">Medical a
```

```

nd Health Sciences</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="pt">Ciências
Médicas e da Saúde</catDesc>
    <category valueDatcat="https://
vocabs.rossio.fcsh.unl.pt/pub/
morais_domains/pt/page/0025"
        xml:id="domain.medical_and_healt
h_sciences.medicine">
        <catDesc xml:lang="en">
            <term>Medicine</term>
            <gloss>
                <!--...-->
            </gloss>
        </catDesc>
        <catDesc xml:lang="pt">
            <term>Medicina</term>
            <gloss>
                <!--...-->
            </gloss>
        </catDesc>
        </category>
        </category>
    <!--...-->
    </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<!--

```

inside an <entry> element: -->

```

<usg type="domain"
valueDatcat="#domain.medical_and_
health_sciences.medicine">Med.</
usg>

```

In the Morais dictionary, the relevant domain labels are in the header, getting referenced inside the dictionary, from <usg> elements. The vocabulary used for dictionary-internal labelling is in turn anchored in the [MorDigital controlled vocabulary service](#) of the NOVA University of Lisbon - School of Social Sciences and Humanities (NOVA FCSH).

The TEI Abstract Model can be expressed as a hierarchy of attribute-value matrices (AVMs) of various types and of various levels of complexity, nested or grouped in various ways. At the most abstract level, an AVM

Note

consists of an information container and the value (contents) of that container.

A simple example of an XML serialization of such structures is, on the one hand, the opening and closing tags that delimit and name the container, and, on the other, the content enclosed by the two tags that constitutes the value. An analogous example is an attribute name and the value of that attribute.

In a TEI XML example of two equivalent serializations expressing the name-value pair `<part-of-speech,common-noun>`, namely `<pos>commonNoun</pos>` and `pos="common-noun"`, one would classify the element `<pos>` and the attribute `pos` as containers (mapping onto the first member of the relevant name-value pair), while the character data content of `<pos>` or the value of `pos` would be seen as mapping onto the second member of the pair.

The `att.datcat` class provides means of addressing the containers and their values, while at the same time providing a way to interpret them in the context of external taxonomies or ontologies. Aligning e.g. both the `<pos>` element and the `pos` attribute with the same value of an external reference point (i.e., an entry in an agreed taxonomy) affirms the identity of the concept serialised by both the element container and the attribute container, and optionally provides a definition of that concept (in the case at hand, the concept *part of speech*).

The value of the `att.datcat` attributes should be a PID (persistent identifier) that points to a specific — and, ideally, shared — taxonomy or ontology. Among the resources that can, to a lesser or greater extent, be used as

inventories of (more or less) standardized linguistic categories are the GOLD ontology, [CLARIN CCR](#), [OLiA](#), or [TermWeb's DatCatInfo](#), and also the [Universal Dependencies](#) inventory, on the assumption that its URIs are going to persist. It is imaginable that a project may choose to address a local taxonomy store instead, but this risks losing the advantage of interchangeability with other projects.

Historically, *datcat* and *valueDatcat* originate from the (now obsolete) ISO 12620:2009 standard, describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). The current version of that standard, ISO 12620-1, does not standardize the serialization of pointers, merely mentioning the TEI att.datcat as an example.

Note that no constraint prevents the occurrence of a combination of att.datcat attributes: the *<fDecl>* element, which is a natural bearer of the *targetDatcat* attribute, is an instance of a specific modeling element, and, in principle, could be semantically fixed by an appropriate reference taxonomy of modeling devices.

att.declarable

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

Module Members

tei
availability *bibl* *editorialDecl*
langUsage *listBibl* *projectDesc*
refsDecl *samplingDecl* *seriesStmt*
sourceDesc *textClass*

Attributes

<i>default</i>	indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
----------------	---

Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.typeValue
Legal values	This element is selected if its parent is selected.
true	
false	This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.

[Def]

ault]

Note

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#). Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of *true*.

att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

back body div front gloss graphic

group lg p ptr ref term text

decls

(declarations)

identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

Status Optional

Datatype $1-\infty$

occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated by
white space

Note

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [16.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](#).

att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

tei

Members

Attributes

add date del gap time unclear

- att.ranging
 - *@atLeast*
 - *@atMost*
 - *@min*
 - *@max*
 - *@confidence*

unit

names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e numerate d

Suggest cm

ed (cent

values imet

include: res)

mm

(milli metr es)

in

(inch es)

line

lines of text

char

(cha racte rs)

char acter s of text

quantity

specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.n umeric

extent

indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific

	vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.te xt	
	<gap extent="5 wo rds"/>
	<height extent="h alf the page"/>
precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.ce rtainty	
scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.e numerate d	
Sample all	
values	meas
include:	urem ent appli es to all insta nces.
most	
	meas urem ent appli es to

most
of
the
insta
nces
insp
ecte
d.

range
meas
urem
ent
appli
es to
only
the
speci
fied
rang
e of
insta
nces.

att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [[4. Default Text Structure](#)]

Module

tei

Members

div lg

Attributes

- att.fragmentable
- @part

org

(organization)
specifies how the
content of the
division is
organized.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerate
d

Legal values composi
te

are: no
clai
m is
mad
e
abou

t the
sequ
ence
in
whic
h the
imm
ediat
e
cont
ents
of
this
divis
ion
are
to be
proc
esse
d, or
their
inter
-
relat
ions
hips.

uniform

the
imm
ediat
e
cont
ents
of
this
elem
ent
are
rega
rded
as
form
ing a
logic
al
unit,
to be
proc

esse
d in
sequ
ence

.
*[Def
ault]*

sample

indicates whether
this division is a
sample of the
original source and
if so, from which
part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e

numerate
d

**Legal
values
are:** initial
divis
ion
lacks
mate
rial
pres
ent
at
end
in
sour
ce.

medial
divis
ion
lacks
mate
rial
at
start
and
end.

final
divis
ion
lacks
mate
rial
at

start

**unknow
n**

posit
ion
of
sam
pled
mate
rial
withi
n
origi
nal
unkn
own.

**complet
e**

divis
ion
is
not a
sam
ple.
*[Def
ault]*

att.docStatus

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module

tei

Members

bibl change revisionDesc

Attributes

status

describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Sample values approve
include: d

candidate	
cleared	
deprecated	
draft	<i>[Default]</i>
embargoed	
expired	
frozen	
galley	
proposed	
published	
recommendation	
submitted	
unfinished	
withdrawn	

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change status="published"
    when="2010-10-21"/>
  <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/>
  <change status="embargoed"
    when="2010-08-02"/>
  <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01"
```

```

who="#MSM"/>
<change status="draft" when="2010-
03-01"
      who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#) [11.3.1. Origination](#) [14.3.2. The Person Element](#) [12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](#)]

Module	tei
Members	<i>att.transcriptional[add del] corr date expan gap name reg time unclear</i>
Attributes	evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.
	Status Optional
	Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of teidata enumerated separately by whitespace
	Suggest internal ed there values e is include: internal evidence to support the intervention.

external
ther
e is
exter
nal
evid
ence
to
supp
ort
the
inter
venti
on.

**conjectu
re**

the
inter
venti
on or
inter
pret
ation
has
been
mad
e by
the
edito
r,
catal
ogue
r, or
schol
ar on
the
basis
of
their
expe
rtise.

instant

indicates whether
this is an instant
revision or not.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.x
TruthVal

		ue
	Default	false
Note		
	The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.	
	Each pointer on the <i>source</i> (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.	

att.edition

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module	tei	
Members	<i>lb milestone pb</i>	
Attributes	ed	(edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line beginning) occurs at this point in the text.
		Status Optional
		Datatype 1-∞
		occurrences of teidata .word separated by whitespace
	edRef	(edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which

the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line beginning) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional
Datatype 1-∞

occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace

Example

<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>

<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>

<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>

<listBibl>

<bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
 <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>
</bibl>

<bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
 <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>

</bibl>

</listBibl>

<!-- ... -->

<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the<pb edRef="#stapledon1968" n="411"/>essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest a

nd endless
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing di
fficulty, my lucid
con<pb break="no" edRef="#stapled
on1937"
n="291"/>sciousness;</p>
In the above example, the soft hyphen
in Stapledon 1937 is omitted. Such
decisions may be documented in the
edition's declaration of editorial
principles, e.g. with the
<hyphenation> element in the
<teiHeader>.

Note

These guidelines provide no semantic
basis or suggested precedence when
both *ed* and *edRef* are provided. For
this reason simultaneous use of both is
not recommended unless
documentation explaining the use is
provided, probably in an ODD
customization, for interchange.

att.fragmentable

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module

Members

Attributes

tei	
att.divLike[div lg]	att.divLike[div lg]
att.segLike[pc s seg w] l p	part

specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between

		two speakers.
Status	Optional	
Datatype	teidata.e	
		numerate
	d	
Legal values	Y	(yes)
		the
		elem
		ent
		is
		frag
		ment
		ed in
		some
		(uns
		peci
		fied)
		resp
		ect
	N	
		(no)
		the
		elem
		ent
		is
		not
		frag
		ment
		ed,
		or no
		clai
		m is
		mad
		e as
		to its
		com
		plete
		ness
		[Def
		ault]
	I	
		(initi
		al)
		this
		is
		the

initial part of a fragment element

M

(medial) this is a medial part of a fragment element

F

(final) this is the final part of a fragment element

Note

The values *I*, *M*, or *F* should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstit

uted.

att.global

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](#)]

Module

Members

tei

TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

Attributes

- att.global.analytic
 - @ana
- att.global.facs
 - @facs
- att.global.linking
 - @corresp
 - @next
 - @prev
- att.global.rendition
 - @rend
- att.global.responsibility

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@cert</i> • <i>@resp</i> • att.global.source • <i>@source</i>
xml:id	(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
Status	Optional
Datatype	ID

Note The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.11. Reference Systems](#).

n	(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
	Status Optional
	Datatype teidata.te

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains

space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

xml:lang

(language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to [BCP 47](#).

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.languange
<p> ... The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss

of the last
<foreign xml:lang=
"rap">ariki</
foreign> or chief
(Routledge 1920:2
05,210) and their c
onnections to
ancestral territoria
l organization.</p>

Note The
xml:lang
value will
be
inherited
from the
immediat
ely
enclosing
element,
or from
its
parent,
and so on
up the
documen
t
hierarchy
. It is
generally
good
practice
to specify
xml:lang
at the
highest
appropria
te level,
noticing
that a
different
default
may be
needed
for the
<teiHead
er> from
that
needed

for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <https://www.iana.org/assign>

[ments/language-subtag-registry](#).

For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts

with `x-` or
contains
`-x-), a`
`<language>`
element
with a
matching
value for
its *ident*
attribute
should be
supplied
in the
TEI
header to
document
this
value.
Such
documentation
may also
optionally
be
supplied
for non-
private-
use
codes,
though
these
must
remain
consistent
with
their
(IETF)Internet
Engineering Task
Force
definitions.

`xml:space`

signals an intention
about how white
space should be

managed by
applications.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Legal values are: sign
als
that
the
application's
default
white-space
processing-instruction
modifies
are
acceptable

preserve indicates the intent
that applications preserve all
white-space

Note The [XML](#)

[specification](#)
provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

att.global.analytic

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [[18.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](#) [18.3. Spans and Interpretations](#)]

Module

Members

analysis
att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute

Attributes

*samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic
signed soCalled sourceDesc sp
speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy
teiCorpus teiHeader term text
textClass time title titlePage titlePart
titleStmt trailer unclear val w]*

ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

Status Optional
Datatype $1-\infty$

occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated by
white space

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage

in
different
contexts.

att.global.facs

att.global.facs provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [[12.1. Digital Facsimiles](#)]

Module Members

transcr	
att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w]	
facsimile	(facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.
Status	Optional

Attributes

Datatype 1-∞
occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated by
white space

att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [17. [Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](#)]

Module Members

linking
att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w] corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to

Attributes

the current element in some way.

Status Optional
Datatype $1-\infty$

occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by whitespace

```
<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
    xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
    xml:lang="en">
    <body corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"
      xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
```

```
</text>
</group>
In this example a
<group> contains
two <text>s, each
containing the
same document in
a different
language. The
correspondence is
indicated using
corresp. The
language is
indicated using
xml:lang, whose
value is inherited;
both the tag with
the corresp and the
tag pointed to by
the corresp inherit
the value from
their immediate
parent.
```

```
<!-- In a placeogra
phy called "places.
xml" --><place cor
resp="people.xml#"
LOND2 people.xml
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND1">
<placeName>Lon
don</placeName>
<desc>The city of
London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary pe
rsonography called
"people.xml" -->
<person corresp="
places.xml#LOND1
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND2">
<persName type=
"lit">London</
persName>
<note>
<p>Allegorical ch
```

acter representin g the city of <place Name ref="places.xml#LOND1">Lon don</ placeName>.</p></note></person><person corresp=" places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2" xml:id="GENI1"><persName type= "lit">London's Gen ius</persName><note><p>Personificatio n of London's geniu s. Appears as an allegorical char acter in mayoral sh ows.</p></note>

</person>
In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or

vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

next

(next) points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.p ointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

prev

(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.p ointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element

bearing
this
attribute.

att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w]

rend

(rendition)
indicates how the
element in
question was
rendered or
presented in the
source text.

Status Optional
Datatype 1-∞

occurrences of teidata.*word* separate d by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing -World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note These Guideline s make no binding recomme ndations for the values of the *rend* attribute; the character istics of visual presentat ion vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual character istics varies too much

from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend* attribute are a set of sequence -

- indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

att.global.responsibility

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](#) [12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](#) [18.3. Spans and Interpretations](#) [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

Module

tei

Members

att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc

Attributes

<i>distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w]</i>	
<i>cert</i>	(certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
Status Optional Datatype teidata.pr obCert	
<i>resp</i>	(responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
Status Optional Datatype 1-∞	
	occurrences of teidata .pointer separate

d by
white spa
ce

Note

To reduce
the
ambiguit
y of a
resp
pointing
directly
to a
person or
organizat
ion, we
recommen
d that
resp be
used to
point not
to an
agent
(<person
> or
<org>)
but to a
<respSt
mt>,
<author
>,
<editor>
or similar
element
which
clarifies
the exact
role
played by
the
agent.
Pointing
to
multiple
<respSt
mt>s
allows
the
encoder
to specify

clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

Blessed are the
<choice>
<sic>cheesemakers</sic>
<corr cert="high" resp="#editor">pe
acemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the
children of God.

Example

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>  
<!-- ... -->  
  <l>Punkes, Panders, base extortionizi  
ng  
    sla<choice>  
      <sic>n</sic>  
      <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u  
    </corr>  
    </choice>es,</l>  
  <!-- ... -->  
  </lg>  
  <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->  
  <!-- ... -->  
  <respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber  
">  
    <resp when="2014">Transcriber</  
resp>  
    <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>  
  </respStmt>
```

att.global.source

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](#) [3.3.3. Quotation](#) [8.3.4. Writing](#)]

Module
Members

tei
att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine

Attributes

<i>address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w]</i>	
source	specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.
Status	Optional
Datatype	$1-\infty$
	occurrences of teidata .pointer separate d by white space
Schemat	<sch:rule
ron	context= "tei:*[@source]">
	<sch:let

name="srcs"
value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source), '')"/>
<sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef | self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec) and \$srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count(

```
$srcs)"/>
.)  
</sch:rep  
ort>  
</sch:rul  
e>
```

Note

The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (<classRef>, <dataRef>, <elementRef>, <macroRef>, <moduleRef>, or <schemaSpec>), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URL, for example an absolute URL, a relative URL, a private scheme URI of the form tei:x.y.z, where x.y.z indicates the version number, e.g. tei:4.3.2 for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a

special
case)
tei:curre
nt for
whatever
is the
latest
release,
or a
private
scheme
URI that
is
expanded
to an
absolute
URI as
documen
ted in a
<prefixD
ef>.

When
used on
elements
describin
g schema
compone
nts,
source
should
have only
one
value;
when
used on
other
elements
multiple
values
are
permitted
.

Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl x
ml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and s
```

Example

```
hould be a contested
term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<p>
<!-- ... -->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Gr
ammatical theories are in flux, and the
more we learn, the
less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual
of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pu
bPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>: <publis
her>University of
Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>
2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page
">p.147</biblScope>.
```

Example

```
</bibl>
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.
1"/>
Include in the schema an element
named <p> available from the TEI P5
2.0.1 release.
```

Example

```
<schemaSpec ident="myODD"
source="mycompiledODD.xml">
<!-- further declarations specifying the
components required -->
</schemaSpec>
Create a schema using components
taken from the file
mycompiledODD.xml.
```

att.interpLike

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [18.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

interp interpGrp

type

indicates what kind
of phenomenon is
being noted in the
passage.

Status	Recommended
Datatype	teidata.e
	numerated
Sample	image
values	ident
include:	ifies
	an
	image
	in
	the
	pass
	age.
character	
	ident
	ifies
	a
	char
	acter
	asso
	ciate
	d
	with
	the
	pass
	age.
theme	
	ident
	ifies
	a
	them
	e in
	the
	pass
	age.
allusion	
	ident
	ifies
	an
	allus
	ion
	to
	ano
	ther
	text.

subtype	(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the phenomenon is being noted in the passage, if needed.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.e
	numerated
Note	The <i>subtype</i> attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its <i>type</i> attribute.
inst	(instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.
Status	Optional
Datatype	$1-\infty$
	occurrences of teidata .pointer separated by whitespace
Note	The current element should be

an
analytic
one. The
element
pointed
at should
be a
textual
one.

att.lexicographic.normalized

att.lexicographic.normalized provides attributes for usage within word-level elements in the analysis module and within lexicographic microstructure in the dictionaries module.

Module

Members

Attributes

analysis

att.linguistic[pc w]

norm

(normalized)

provides the
normalized/standar
dized form of
information
present in the
source text in a
non-normalized
form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.te
xt

Normalization of
part-of-speech
information within
a dictionary entry.

```
<gramGrp>  
  <pos norm="noun">n</pos>  
</gramGrp>
```

Normalization of a
source form in a
tokenized historical
corpus.

```
<s>  
  <w>for</w>  
  <w norm="virtue's">virtue's</w>  
  <w>vertues</w>  
  <w>sake</w>  
</s>  
<s>
```

<w norm="persuasion">perswasion</w>

<w>of</w>

<w norm="Unity">Vnitie</w>

</s>

Example of normalization from [Aviso. Relation oder Zeitung. Wolfenbüttel, 1609. In: Deutsches Textarchiv.](#)

<s>

<w norm="freiwillig">freywillig</w>

<pc join="left"

norm=","></pc>

<w norm="unbedrängt">vnbedrängt

</w>

<w norm="und">vnd</w>

<w norm="unverhindert">vnuerhindert</w>

</s>

<w norm="Teil">T

heyll</w>

<w norm="Freude">Frewde</w>

(original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

Example from a language documentation project of the Mixtepec-Mixtec language (ISO 639-3: 'mix'). This is a

orig

use case where speakers spell something incorrectly but we would like to preserve it for any number of reasons, the use of *orig* is essential and could have uses for both the speaker to see past mistakes, researchers to get insight into how untrained speakers write their language instinctually (in contrast to prescribed convention), etc.:

<w orig="ntsa sia'i">ntsasia'i</w>

Example from the [EarlyPrint](#) project.

Fragment of text where obvious errors have been corrected but the original forms remain recorded:

<w lemma="he" pos="pns" xml:id="b1afj-003-

a-0950">he</w>

<w lemma="have" pos="vvz" xml:id="b1afj-003-

a-0960">hath</w>

<w lemma="bring" pos="vvn" xml:id="b1afj-003-

a-0970">brought</w>

<w lemma="forth" orig="sorth" pos="av"

```
xml:id="b1afj-003-a-0980">forth</w>
```

An example from the EarlyPrint project showing the use of both *norm* and *orig*. The *orig* attribute preserves the original version (sometimes with spelling errors, often with printer abbreviations), the element content resolves printer abbreviations but retains the original orthography, and the *norm* attribute holds normalized values:

```
<w lemma="comm  
andment"  
norm="command  
ment"  
orig="commande  
mēt"  
pos="n1"  
xml:id="b9avr-  
018-a-  
7720">commande  
ment</w>
```

Note

It needs to be stressed that the two attributes in this class are meant for strictly lexicographic and linguistic uses, and not for editorial interventions. For the latter, the mechanism based on *<choice>*, *<orig>*, and *<reg>* needs to be employed.

att.linguistic

att.linguistic provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically *<w>* and *<pc>* in the analysis module. [[18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](#)]

Module
Members
Attributes

analysis	
<i>pc w</i>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.lexicographic.normalized • <i>@norm</i> • <i>@orig</i>
lemma	provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.
	<p>Status Optional Datatype teidata.te xt</p> <pre><w lemma="wife">wives</w> <w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w></pre>
lemmaRef	provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.
	<p>Status Optional Datatype teidata.p ointer</p> <pre><w lemma="hit" lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml" type="verb">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m></w></pre>
pos	(part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a token (i.e. information on whether it is a noun, adjective, or

verb), usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: STTS, for English: CLAWS, for Polish: NKJP, etc.).

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.te

xt

The German sentence ‘Wir fahren in den Urlaub.’ tagged with the Stuttgart-Tuebingen-Tagset (STTS).

```
<s>
  <w pos="PPER">
  Wir</w>
  <w pos="VVFIN">
  >fahren</w>
  <w pos="APPR">i
  n</w>
  <w pos="ART">de
  n</w>
  <w pos="NN">Ur
  laub</w>
  <w pos="$.">.</
  w>
</s>
```

The English sentence ‘We're going to Brazil.’ tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged inline (with significant whitespace).

```
<p><w pos="PNP">We</w><w pos =
="VBB">'re</w>
<w pos="VVG">go
ing</w> <w pos =
"PRP">to</w> <w
pos="NP0">Brazil
</w><pc pos="PU
```

N">.</pc></p>

The English sentence 'We're going on vacation to Brazil for a month!' tagged with the [CLAWS-7](#) tagset and arranged sequentially.

```
<p>
<w pos="PPIS2">
We</w>
<w pos="VBR">'r
e</w>
<w pos="VVG">g
oing</w>
<w pos="II">on</
w>
<w pos="NN1">v
acation</w>
<w pos="II">to</
w>
<w pos="NP1">B
razil</w>
<w pos="IF">for
</w>
<w pos="AT1">a
</w>
<w pos="NNT1">
month</w>
<pc pos="!">!</
pc>
</p>
```

msd

(morphosyntactic description) supplies morphosyntactic information for a token, usually according to some official reference vocabulary (e.g. for German: [STTS-large tagset](#); for a feature description system designed as

(pragmatically universal, see [Universal Features](#)).

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

<ab>
<w msd="1.Pl.*.Nom"
pos="PPER">Wir

</w>
<w msd="1.Pl.Pre.s.Ind"
pos="VVFIN">fahren</w>

<w msd="--"
pos="APPR">in</w>

<w msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg"
pos="ART">den</w>

<w msd="Masc.Akk.Sg"
pos="NN">Urlaub</w>

<pc msd="--"
pos="\$.">.</pc>

</ab>

when present, provides information on whether the token in question is adjacent to another, and if so, on which side.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

Legal values no
are: the token is not adjacent

join

cent
to
anot
her

left

ther
e is
no
whit
espa
ce
on
the
left
side
of
the
toke
n

right

ther
e is
no
whit
espa
ce
on
the
right
side
of
the
toke
n

both

ther
e is
no
whit
espa
ce
on
eithe
r
side
of
the

toke
n
overlap
the
toke
n
overl
aps
with
anot
her;
othe
r
devi
ces
(spe
cifyi
ng
the
exte
nt
and
the
area
of
overl
ap)
are
need
ed to
more
preci
sely
locat
e
this
toke
n in
the
char
acter
strea
m

The example below
assumes that the
lack of whitespace
is marked
redundantly, by

using the appropriate values of *join*.

```
<s>
  <pc join="right">
  "</pc>
  <w join="left">Fri
  ends</w>
  <w>will</w>
  <w>be</w>
  <w join="right">f
  riends</w>
  <pc join="both">.
  </pc>
  <pc join="left">"
```

```
</pc>
</s>
```

Note that a project may make a decision to only indicate lack of whitespace in one direction, or do that non-redundantly. The existing proposal is the broadest possible, on the assumption that we adopt the "streamable view", where all the information on the current element needs to be represented locally. The English sentence 'We're going on vacation.' tagged with the CLAWS-5 tagset, arranged sequentially, tagged on the assumption that only the lack of the preceding whitespace is

indicated.

```
<p>
  <w pos="PNP">W
  e</w>
  <w join="left"
    pos="VBB">'re</
  w>
  <w pos="VVG">g
  oing</w>
  <w pos="PRP">on
  </w>
  <w pos="NN1">v
  acation</w>
  <pc join="left"
    pos="PUN">. </
  pc>
</p>
```

Note The definition of this attribute is adapted from ISO MAF (Morpho-syntactic Annotation Framework), ISO 24611:2012.

Note

These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section [18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation](#) for discussion.

att.media

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module

tei

Members

graphic

Attributes

width

Where the media

	are displayed, indicates the display width.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.o utputMea surement
height	Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.o utputMea surement
scale	Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.n umeric

att.milestoneUnit

att.milestoneUnit provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [[3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration](#)]

Module	core
Members	<i>milestone</i>
Attributes	unit
	provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.
Status	Required
Datatype	teidata.e numerate d
Suggest page	
ed	phys
values	ical
include:	page begin nnin

gs
(syn
ony
mou
s
with
the
<pb
>
elem
ent).

column
colu
mn
begi
nnin
gs.

line
line
begi
nnin
gs
(syn
ony
mou
s
with
the
<lb>
elem
ent).

book
any
units
term
ed
book
,

liber,
etc.

poem
indiv
idual
poe
ms
in a
colle

ction

canto

cant
os or
othe
r
majo
r
secti
ons
of a
poe
m.

speaker

chan
ges
of
spea
ker
or
narr
ator.

stanza

stan
zas
withi
n a
poe
m,
book
, or
cant
o.

act

acts
withi
n a
play.

scene

scen
es
withi
n a
play
or
act.

section
secti
ons
of
any
kind.

absent
pass
ages
not
pres
ent
in
the
refer
ence
editi
on.

**unnum
ered**
pass
ages
pres
ent
in
the
text,
but
not
to be
inclu
ded
as
part
of
the
refer
ence

.
< milestone ed="La
"
n="23"
unit="Dreissiger"/
>
... < milestone ed=
"AV"
n="24"

`unit="verse"/> ...`

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next `<milestone>` tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values

	suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. <i>Stephanus</i> for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).
	The <i>type</i> attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](#) [14.3.7. Names and Nyms](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

att.personal[name] author editor pubPlaces

- att.canonical
- @key
- @ref

role

may be used to specify further

information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype $1-\infty$

occurrences
of teidata
.enumerated
separated
d by
whitespace

nymRef

(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype $1-\infty$

occurrences
of teidata
.pointer
separated
d by
whitespace

Note

The value must point directly to one or

more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.notated

att.notated provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

Module
Members
Attributes

tei
formula s seg w
notation

names the notation used for the content of the element.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e numerated

att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]

Module tei

Members Attributes

name

- att.naming
- *@role*
- *@nymRef*
- att.canonical
- *@key*
- *@ref*

full

indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e

numerate d

Legal values yes

(yes)

the nam e com pone nt is spell ed out in full.
[Default]

abb

(abb revia ted)

the nam e

com pone nt is

give n in an abbr eviat

		ed form
		.
init		(initi al lette r) the nam e com pone nt is indic ated only by one initia l.
sort		(sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name. Status Optional Datatype teidata.c ount

att.placement

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions
12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module	tei	
Members	<i>att.transcriptional</i> [<i>add del</i>] <i>div figure head label note postscript sp speaker stage trailer</i>	
Attributes	place	specifies where this item is placed. Status Recomme nded Datatype 1-∞ occurren ces of teidata .enumera

ted
separate
d by
white spa
ce

Suggest top

ed at
values the
include: top
of
the
page

bottom

at
the
foot
of
the
page

margin

in
the
mar
gin
(left,
right
, or
both
)

opposite

on
the
oppo
site,
i.e.
facin
g,
page

overleaf

on
the
othe
r
side
of
the
leaf

above

abov
e the
line

right

to
the
right
, e.g.
to
the
right
of a
verti
cal
line
of
text,
or to
the
right
of a
figur
e

below

belo
w
the
line

left

to
the
left,
e.g.
to
the
left
of a
verti
cal
line
of
text,
or to
the
left
of a

figure
e

end

at
the
end
of
e.g.
chap
ter
or
volu
me.

inline

withi
n the
body
of
the
text.

inspace

in a
pred
efine
d
spac
e,
for
exa
mple
left
by
an
earli
er
scrib
e.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]
</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on th
```

e facing page]</
add>
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</
note>

att.pointing

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](#)]

Module	tei
Members	<i>catRef gloss licence note ptr ref term</i>
Attributes	<i>targetLang</i> specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by <i>target</i> , using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47 .
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.language
Schematron	<sch:rule context= "tei:[not (self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"><sch:assert test="@target" >@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert

```
ert>
</sch:rul
e>
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="pl"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"/>
  <ptr target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    targetLang="sw"
    type="tuv"
    xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"/>
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or

contains
-x-), a
<language>
element
with a
matching
value for
its *ident*
attribute
should be
supplied
in the
TEI
header to
document
this
value.
Such
documentation
may also
optionally
be
supplied
for non-
private-
use
codes,
though
these
must
remain
consistent
with
their
(IETF)Internet
Engineering Task
Force
definitions.

target

specifies the
destination of the
reference by
supplying one or

more URI
References.

Status Optional

Datatype $1^{-\infty}$

occurred
of teidata
.pointer
separated by
white space

Note

One or more syntactically valid URI references,
separated by white space.
Because white space is used to separate URIs, no white space is permitted inside a single URI. If a white space character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g.

TEI
%20Cons
ortium.

evaluate

(evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Legal values are: all

if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a

point
er.

one

if the
elem
ent
point
ed to
is
itself
a
point
er,
then
its
targ
et
(whe
ther
a
point
er or
not)
is
take
n as
the
targ
et of
this
point
er.

none

no
furth
er
eval
uatio
n of
targ
ets is
carri
ed
out
beyo
nd
that

need
ed to
find
the
elem
ent
speci
fied
in
the
point
er's
targ
et.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module

tei

Members

att.dimensions[add date del gap time unclear] num

Attributes

atLeast

gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numerical

atMost	gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.n	umeric
min	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.n	umeric
max	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.n	umeric
confidence	specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by <i>min</i> and <i>max</i> , or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.
Status Optional	
Datatype teidata.pr	obability

Example

The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from

```

<del rend="overstrike">
<gap atLeast="1" atMost="2"
extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/>
</del>

```

Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.

Example

Americares has been supporting the health sector in Eastern Europe since 1986, and since 1992 has provided `<measure atLeast="120000000 commodity="currency" unit="USD">` more than \$120m`</measure>` in aid to Ukrainians.

att.resourced

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module	tei	
Members	<i>graphic</i>	
Attributes	url	(uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.
		Status Required Datatype teidata.pointer

att.scope

att.scope provides attributes to describe, in general terms, the scope of an element's application.

Module	tei	
Members	<i>language</i>	
Attributes	scope	indicates the scope of application of the element
		Status Optional Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggest sole

ed values include: only this particular feature is used throughout the document

major this feature is used throughout most of the document

minor this feature is used occasionally through the document

<langUsage>
<language ident="en"
 scope="major"/>
<language ident="es"
 scope="minor"/>
<language ident="x-ww"

```

    scope="minor">A
n invented languag
e the children call
<name>Wikwah</
name>.</
language>
</langUsage>
<handNote scope=
"sole">
<p>Written in ins
ular phase II half-
uncial with
interlinear Old E
nglish gloss in an A
nglo-Saxon
pointed minuscul
e.</p>
</handNote>
```

att.segLike

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.
[\[17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors\]](#) [\[18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories\]](#)

Module	tei
Members	<i>pc s seg w</i>
Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • att.datcat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@datcat</i> • <i>@valueDatcat</i> • <i>@targetDatcat</i> • att.fragmentable <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>@part</i>
	function (function)
	characterizes the function of the segment.
Status	Optional
Datatype	teidata.e
	numerated
Note	Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which

they are attached. For example, a `<cl>`, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a `<phr>`, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](#)]

Module

tei

Members

bibl idno item list listBibl term

Attributes

sortKey

supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAME">

<term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term></index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produce the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-

dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is

required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.spanning

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [[12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](#) [1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

index lb milestone pb

spanTo

indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Schemat The

ron @spanTo

attribute

must

point to

an

element

following

the

current

element;

however,

this can

only be

tested if

both this

element

and the

one

pointed

to are in
the same
documen
t.
<sch:rule
context= "tei:*[sta
rts-
with(@s
panTo,
'#')]">
<sch:ass
ert test="id(substr
ing(@sp
anTo,
2))
>> .">Th
e element
indicated
by
@spanTo
(<sch:val
ue-of sele
ct="@spa
nTo"/>)
must
follow
the
current
<sch:na
me/>
element
</sch:ass
ert>
</sch:rul
e>

Note

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the

element itself.

att.tableDecoration

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [[15. Tables, Formulae, Graphics, and Notated Music](#)]

Module	figures	
Members	<i>cell row</i>	
Attributes	role	(role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.e
		numerate
		d
		Suggest label
	ed	label
	values	ling
	include:	or
		desc
		ripti
		ve
		infor
		mati
		on
		only.
	data	
		data
		valu
		es.
		[Default]
Note		When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified

on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <row> element.

rows

(rows) indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.c
ount

Default 1

Note A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

cols

(columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.c
ount

Default	1
Note	A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

att.timed

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

Module	tei	
Members	<i>gap</i>	
Attributes	start	indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.pointer
		Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately

preceding element at the same hierarchical level.

end

indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchical level.

att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [[12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions](#)]

Module

tei

Members

add del

Attributes

- att.editLike
 - *@evidence*
 - *@instant*
- att.placement
 - *@place*
- att.written

- *@hand*

status

indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerated

Sample **duplicate**

values e

include: all of the text indicated as an addition duplicate s some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-

word
or
less
exac
t.

**duPLICAT
E-PARTIAL**

part
of
the
text
indic
ated
as
an
addit
ion
dupli
cate
s
some
text
that
is in
the
origi
nal

**EXCESS
START**

some
text
at
the
begi
nnin
g of
the
delet
ion
is
mark
ed as
delet
ed
even
thou
gh it

clear
ly
shou
ld
not
be
delet
ed.

**excessE
nd**

some
text
at
the
end
of
the
delet
ion
is
mark
ed as
delet
ed
even
thou
gh it
clear
ly
shou
ld
not
be
delet
ed.

**shortSta
rt**

some
text
at
the
begi
nnin
g of
the
delet
ion

is
not
mark
ed as
delet
ed
even
thou
gh it
clear
ly
shou
ld
be.

**shortEn
d**

some
text
at
the
end
of
the
delet
ion
is
not
mark
ed as
delet
ed
even
thou
gh it
clear
ly
shou
ld
be.

partial

some
text
in
the
delet
ion
is

not
mark
ed as
delet
ed
even
thou
gh it
clear
ly
shou
ld
be.

**unremar
kable**

the
delet
ion
is
not
fault
y.
*[Def
ault]*

Note

Status
informati
on on
each
deletion
is needed
rather
rarely
except in
critical
editions
from
authorial
manuscri
pts;
status
informati
on on
additions
is even
less
common.

Marking

a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

cause

documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e
numerated

seq

(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.c
ount

att.translatable

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module	tagdocs	
Members	<i>desc gloss</i>	
Attributes	versionDate	specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator
		Status Optional
		Datatype teidata.temporal.working
		Note The <i>versionDate</i> attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the <i>versionDate</i> value on the translation. If the file has changed, changes can be

checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

att.typed

att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 18.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 17.1.1. Pointers and Links 17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei

TEI abbr add anchor bibl change cit corr date del desc div divGen figure gloss graphic group head ident idno label lb lg list listBibl milestone name note num pb pc ptr ref reg relatedItem rs s seg table teiCorpus term text time title titlePage titlePart trailer w

type

characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.e
numerated

<div type="verse">

<head>Night in T

arras</head>

```
<lg type="stanza">
  <l>At evening tra
  mping on the hot w
  hite road</l>
  <l>...</l>
</lg>
<lg type="stanza">
  <l>A wind sprang
  up from nowhere a
  s the sky</l>
  <l>...</l>
</lg>
</div>
```

Note The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.attributed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

subtype

(subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.e

Note numerate
d
The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additiona l to that provided by its *type* attribute.

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]">
<sch:assert test="@type">The
<sch:name/> element should not be
categorized in detail with @subtype
unless also categorized in general with
@type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
When appropriate, values from an
established typology should be used.
Alternatively a typology may be
defined in the associated TEI header. If
values are to be taken from a project-
specific list, this should be defined
using the <valList> element in the
project-specific schema description, as
described in 24.3.1.3. Modification of
Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .
```

att.written

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](#)]

Module

Members

Attributes

tei
*att.transcriptional[add del] closer
dateline div emph figure head hi label
note opener p postscript salute seg
signed sp speaker stage text trailer*
hand points to a
<handNote>

element describing
the hand
considered
responsible for the
content of the
element concerned.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.p
ointer

Macros

macro.limitedContent

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

desc figDesc

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.limitedContent =
( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

add corr del docEdition emph hi
imprimatur orig p ref reg salute seg sic
signed title titlePart unclear

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
```

```
<classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.paraContent = ( text | tei_model.paraPart )*
```

macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module

Used by

```
tei
abbr addrLine author biblScope
distributor docAuthor docDate edition
editor eg expan extent foreign gloss
label mentioned name num pubPlace
publisher rs s soCalled speaker term
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.attributable"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq =
( text
| tei_model.gLike
| tei_model.attributable
| tei_model.phrase
| tei_model.global
)*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module

Used by

```
tei
authority classCode funder language
principal resp sponsor
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"
/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited =
( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_
model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module

tei

Used by

cell change item licence note q stage

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.divPart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.specialPara =
(
  text
  | tei_model.gLike
  | tei_model.phrase
  | tei_model.inter
  | tei_model.divPart
  | tei_model.global
)*
```

Datatypes

teidata.certainty

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module

tei

Used by

teidata.probCert

Content model

```
<content>
<valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="high"/>
  <valItem ident="medium"/>
  <valItem ident="low"/>
  <valItem ident="unknown"/>
</valList>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"

Note

Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values *high*, *medium*, or *low*. The value *unknown* should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module

tei

Used by

Element:

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Note

Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\\-]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\\-]+"} 
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-
```

Example

```
quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a ha-
```

Example

```
lf</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</
```

Example

```
date>
```

Note

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</
```

```
time>
```

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601
Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times.

teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for

representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="duration"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the [W3C specification](#).

teidata.enumerated

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module

tei

Used by

Element:

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word
Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

teidata.language

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](#)]

Module

Used by

Content model

tei
Element:

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="language"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident="" />
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.language = xsd:language | ()

The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](#). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the

fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language

The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script

The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region

Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

variant

An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.

extension

An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension T indicates that the content was transformed. For example *en-t-it* could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension T is described in the informational [RFC 6497](#). Extension U can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational [RFC 6067](#).

private use

An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](#) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag.

These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn

Shona

zh-TW

Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK

Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL

English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl

Polish

es-MX

Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419

Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](#).

teidata.name

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module

tei

Used by

att giElement:

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="Name"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.name = xsd:Name

Note

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name

(see <https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

teidata.namespace

teidata.namespace defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C [Namespaces in XML](#) Technical Recommendation.

Module tei
Used by
Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="anyURI" restriction
= "\S+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI {
    pattern = "\S+"}
```

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier \(URI\): Generic Syntax](#)

teidata.numeric

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei
Used by
Content model Element:

```
<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef name="double"/>
<dataRef name="token"
restriction="(\-?[\d]+\.\-?[\d]+)"/>
<dataRef name="decimal"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.numeric =
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+\.\-?[\d]+)"} | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a

decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

teidata.outputMeasurement

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[-+]?d+(.\d+)?(%|cm|
    mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
    vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[-+]?d+(.\d+)?(%|cm|
    mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|
    vmin|vmax)"
  }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" width="600px"/>
</figure>
```

Note

These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](#).

teidata.pattern

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.pattern = token

[Wikipedia](#)

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

teidata.pointer

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module
Used by
Content model

tei
Element:

```
<content>
<dataRef name="anyURI" restriction
="\\S+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }

The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier \(URI\): Generic Syntax](#). Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987 Internationalized Resource Identifiers](#) (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example,
<https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/> is encoded as
<https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25> while <http://--.org.وزارة.الاتصالات.مصر> is encoded as <http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/>

teidata.probCert

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module
Used by
Content model

tei

```
<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
<dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty

teidata.probability

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a

probability.

Module
Used by
Content model

tei
teidata.probCert

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="double">
    <dataFacet name="minInclusive" value="0"/>
    <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" value="1"/>
  </dataRef>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double
Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

teidata.replacement

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module
Used by
Content model

tei

```
<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>
```

Declaration

tei_teidata.replacement = text

teidata.temporal.w3c

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

Module
Used by
Content model

tei

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
```

```

<dataRef name="gDay"/>
<dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
<dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
<dataRef name="time"/>
<dataRef name="dateTime"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Declaration

```

tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime

```

Note

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

teidata.temporal.working

teidata.temporal.working defines the range of values, conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification, expressing a date or a date and a time within the working life of the document.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"
    restriction="(19[789][0-9]|2-9)[0-9]{3}).*/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"
    restriction="(19[789][0-9]|2-9)[0-9]{3}).*/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Declaration

```

tei_teidata.temporal.working =
  xsd:date { pattern = "(19[789][0-9]|2-9)[0-9]{3}).*" }
  | xsd:dateTime { pattern = "(19[789]|2-9)[0-9]{3}.*" }

```

Note

[0-9][2-9][0-9]{3}).*" }

If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

The earliest time expressable with this datatype is 01 January 1970 (the Unix Epoch), which could be written as either 1970-01-01 or 1970-01-01T00:00:00Z.

teidata.text

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="string"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.text = string

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

teidata.truthValue

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module

tei

Used by

Element:

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="boolean"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean

The possible values of this datatype are *1* or *true*, or *0* or *false*.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. *unknown*, or *inapplicable*, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

teidata.unboundedCount

teidata.unboundedCount defines the range of values used for a counting number or the string *unbounded* for infinity.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
  </alternate>
  <valList type="closed">
    <valItem ident="unbounded"/>
  </valList>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.unboundedCount = xsd:non
NegativeInteger | ( "unbounded" )
```

teidata.version

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.version = token { pattern =
"[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }
```

Note

The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<https://unicode.org/versions/>). A

version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

teidata.versionNumber

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module

tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-
z]*[\d]*){0,3}" />
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.
[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

teidata.word

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module

tei

Used by

teidata.enumeratedElement:

Content model

```
<content>
<dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[^p{C}p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^
p{C}p{Z}]+" }
```

Note

Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

teidata.xTruthValue

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="boolean"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident="unknown"/>
      <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean |  
( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )
```

Note

In cases where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue.

teidata.xmlName

teidata.xmlName defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="NCName"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName  
The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.
```

teidata.xpath

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <textNode/>
</content>
```

Declaration

Note

tei_teidata.xpath = text

Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [6.2..](#)

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the [article at OWASP](#).